

🍏 Apple Lisa Computer
Technical Information



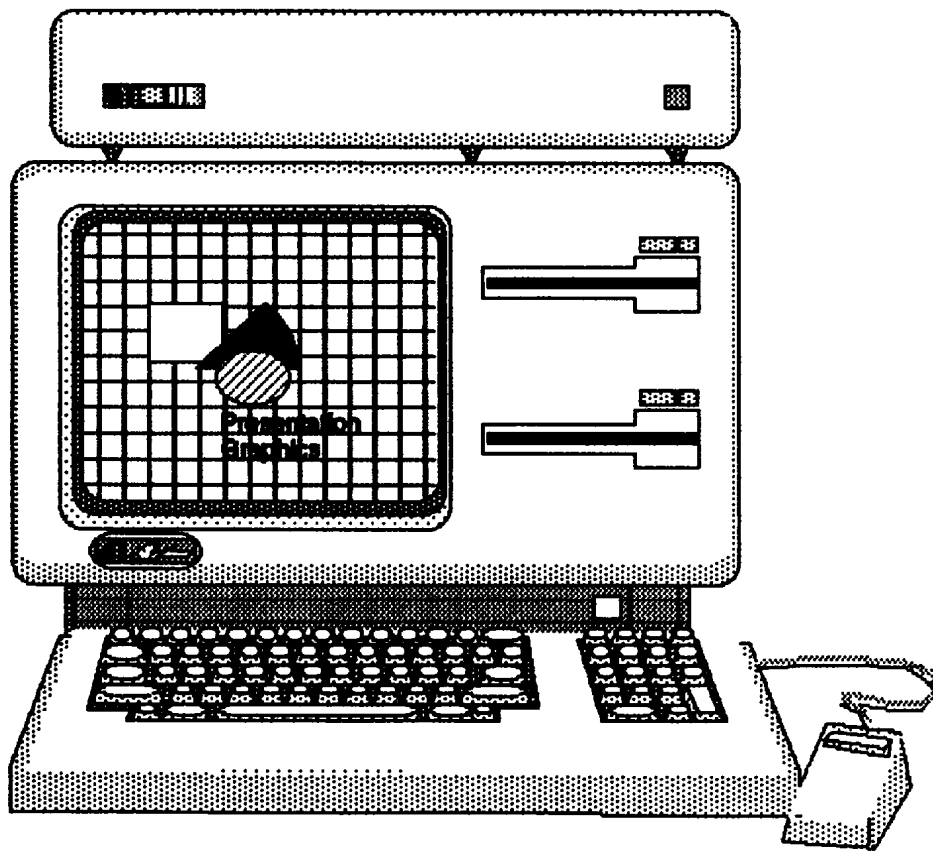
Apple Lisa Computer:
Hardware Manual
1983
(with Errata)

Lisa Computer:
1983 - 1985



Apple Lisa Personal Computer
1983 to 1985

Hardware Manual (May 83)



MACINTOSH XL HARWARE INFORMATION UPDATE

Uploaded to CompuServe by Gary Kato

See also: **Lisa Hardware Manual**

Written by: Mark Baumwell (Apple Computer, Inc.)

16 May 1985

This document covers Macintosh XL information that is either incorrectly documented or not documented elsewhere.

I/O Space Addresses

The *Lisa Hardware Manual* shows incorrect addresses for locations in the I/O space such as the expansion slots, floppy disk controller, serial ports, parallel ports, keyboard/mouse control, etc. The addresses are listed as 00xxxx in the manual, but should be FCxxxx. As an example, refer to Figure 2-6 (System I/O Space Overview) in the Lisa Hardware Manual. The correct addresses for the expansion slots are (all in hexadecimal):

| Addresses | Function |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| FC0000 - FC1FFF | Expansion slot #1 Low Decode |
| FC2000 - FC3FFF | Expansion slot #1 High Decode |
| FC4000 - FC5FFF | Expansion slot #2 Low Decode |
| FC6000 - FC7FFF | Expansion slot #2 High Decode |
| FC8000 - FC9FFF | Expansion slot #3 Low Decode |
| FCC000 - FCBFFF | Expansion slot #3 High Decode |

Also note that while the I/O space addresses are in the range FCxxxx, the Boot ROM addresses are in the range FExxxx.

{ Actually that's Figure 2-5. - gary - }

Reading the Boot ROM version number

To check the version number of the Boot ROM, display location FE3FFC for 4 bytes. If you display it from LisaBug, the display looks something like this:

```
00FE3FFC 0248
```

The version number is 0248, or 2.48. Note that 48 hex = ASCII H. Therefore the ROM revision is H. Note the Boot ROM version number and the Floppy ROM version number are displayed in the upper right hand corner of the Macintosh XL screen during the self test. For example if H/88 was displayed on the screen during the self test, the Boot ROM is revision H and the Floppy ROM version is 88.

Reading Parallel Interface Card ROM Version Numbers

Note that if a Parallel Interface Card is installed, you can check its ROM version number by adding FF8 to the start of the Low Decode address of the slot the card is in and then displaying the resulting 4 bytes. To interpret the version number, look at the low order byte of each word. For example, to check the ROM version number of a Parallel Interface Card in slot 2, display location FC4FF8 for 4 bytes. If you display it from LisaBug, the display looks something like this:

```
00FC4FF8  0001 0007
```

Since the ROM is on the lower half of the data bus, the upper half of the data bus should be interpreted as don't cares. Therefore, the version number is 0107, or 1.07.

Parallel Interface Card VIA Offsets

Each Parallel Interface Card has two 6522 Versatile Interface Adapters (VIAs), one for each parallel port. The address of the VIAs is found by adding constants to the Expansion slot decodes as described below.

Add 2000 hex to the slot low decode to get the lower VIA base address.
Add 2800 hex to the slot low decode to get the upper VIA base address.

For example:

FC2000 is the slot 1 lower VIA base address.
FC2800 is the slot 1 upper VIA base address.

Internal VIA locations

There are two VIAs on the Macintosh XL I/O board. The first VIA (VIA1) is controlled by a COPS processor and is connected to the mouse, keyboard, and other peripherals. The second VIA (VIA2) controls the built-in parallel port. The VIA locations and offsets to their registers and timers are as follows:

```

VIA1BASE      .EQU    $FCDD81      ;Base address - offsets follow
ORB1          .EQU    $0           ;Port B output register
ORA1          .EQU    $2           ;Port A output register
DDRB1        .EQU    $4           ;Port B Data Direction register
DDRA1        .EQU    $6           ;Port A Data Direction register
T1LL1        .EQU    $C           ;Low Order T1 Latch
T1LH1        .EQU    $E           ;High Order T1 Latch
T2CL1        .EQU    $10          ;Low Order T2 Counter
T2CH1        .EQU    $12          ;Low Order T2 Counter

VIA2BASE      .EQU    $PCD901      ;Base address - offsets follow
ORB2          .EQU    $0           ;Port B output register
IRB2          .EQU    $0           ;Port B input register
ORA2          .EQU    $8           ;Port A output register
IRA2          .EQU    $8           ;Port A input register
DDRB2        .EQU    $10          ;Port B Data Direction register
DDRA2        .EQU    $18          ;Port A Data Direction register
T1LL2        .EQU    $30          ;Low Order T1 Latch
T1LH2        .EQU    $38          ;High Order T1 Latch
T2CL2        .EQU    $40          ;Low Order T2 Counter
T2CH2        .EQU    $48          ;Low Order T2 Counter
    
```

{ End of document - gary - }

Macintosh XL Hardware Information



See also: Lisa Hardware Manual (MAY 1983)

Written by: Mark Baumwell 16 May 1985

This document covers Macintosh XL information that is either incorrectly documented or not documented elsewhere.

I/O Space Addresses

The Lisa Hardware manual shows incorrect addresses for locations in the I/O space such as the expansion slots, floppy disk controller, serial ports, parallel ports, keyboard/mouse control, etc. The addresses are listed as 00xxxx in the manual, but should be FCxxxx. As an example, refer to figure 2-3 (System I/O Space Overview) in the Lisa Hardware manual. The correct addresses for the expansion slots are (all in hexadecimal):

| <u>Address</u> | <u>Function</u> |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| FC0000 - FC1FFF | Expansion slot #1 Low Decode |
| FC2000 - FC3FFF | Expansion slot #1 High Decode |
| FC4000 - FC5FFF | Expansion slot #2 Low Decode |
| FC6000 - FC7FFF | Expansion slot #2 High Decode |
| FC8000 - FC9FFF | Expansion slot #3 Low Decode |
| FCA000 - FCBFFF | Expansion slot #3 High Decode |

Also note that while the I/O space addresses are in the range FCxxxx, the Boot ROM addresses are in the range FExxxx. (16K Rom)

Reading the Boot ROM version number

To check the version number of the Boot ROM, display location FE3FFC for 4 bytes. If you display it from LisaBug, the display looks something like this:

00FE3FFC 0248

The version number is 0248, or 2.48. Note that 48 hex = ASCII H. Therefore, the ROM revision is H. Note the the Boot ROM version number and the Floppy ROM version number are displayed in the upper right hand corner of the Macintosh XL screen during the self test. For example if H/88 was displayed on the screen during the self test, the Boot ROM is revision H and the floppy ROM version number is 88.

Reading Parallel Interface Card ROM version numbers

Note that if a Parallel Interface Card is installed, you can check its ROM version number by adding FF8 to the start of the Low Decode address of the slot the card is in and then displaying the resulting location for 4 bytes. To interpret the version number, look at the low order byte of each word. For example, to check the ROM version number of a Parallel Interface Card in slot 2, display location FC4FF8 for 4 bytes. If you display it from LisaBug, the display looks something like this:

00FC4FF8 0001 0007

Since the ROM is on the lower half of the data bus, the upper half of the data bus should be interpreted as don't cares. Therefore, the version number is 0107, or 1.07.

Parallel Interface Card VIA offsets

Each Parallel Interface Card has two 6522 Versatile Interface Adapters (VIAs), one for each parallel port. The address of the VIAs is found by adding constants to the Expansion slot decodes as described below.

Add 2000 hex to the slot low decode to get to the lower VIA base address.

Add 2800 hex to the slot low decode to get to the upper VIA base address.

For example:

FC2000 is the slot 1 lower VIA base address.

FC2800 is the slot 1 upper VIA base address.

Internal VIA locations

There are two VIAs on the Macintosh XL I/O board. The first VIA (VIA1) is controlled by a COPS processor and is connected to the mouse, keyboard, and other peripherals. The second VIA (VIA2) controls the built-in parallel port. The VIA locations and offsets to their registers and timers are as follows:

| | | | |
|----------|------|----------|----------------------------------|
| VIA1BASE | .EQU | \$FCDD81 | ; Base address - offsets follow |
| ORB1 | .EQU | \$0 | ; Port B output Register |
| ORA1 | .EQU | \$2 | ; Port A output Register |
| DDRB1 | .EQU | \$4 | ; Port B Data Direction Register |
| DDRA1 | .EQU | \$6 | ; Port A Data Direction Register |
| T1LL1 | .EQU | \$C | ; Low Order T1 Latch |
| T1LH1 | .EQU | \$E | ; High Order T1 Latch |
| T2CL1 | .EQU | \$10 | ; Low Order T2 Counter |
| T2CH1 | .EQU | \$12 | ; High Order T2 Counter |

| | | | |
|----------|------|----------|----------------------------------|
| VIA2BASE | .EQU | \$FCD901 | ; Base address - offsets follow |
| ORB2 | .EQU | \$0 | ; Port B output Register |
| IRB2 | .EQU | \$0 | ; Port B input Register |
| ORA2 | .EQU | \$8 | ; Port A Output Register |
| IRA2 | .EQU | \$8 | ; Port A Input Register |
| DDRB2 | .EQU | \$10 | ; Port B Data Direction Register |
| DDRA2 | .EQU | \$18 | ; Port A Data Direction Register |
| T1LL2 | .EQU | \$30 | ; Low Order T1 Latch |
| T1LH2 | .EQU | \$38 | ; High Order T1 Latch |
| T2CL2 | .EQU | \$40 | ; Low Order T2 Counter |
| T2CH2 | .EQU | \$48 | ; High Order T2 Counter |

≡ FINIS ≡

{RECEIVED BY DTC OF P CUBED: 6-MAR-1985}

PAGES: 326

To: Readers

From: Gail Pilkington

Re: Lisa Theory of Operations

Date: June 3, 1983

This memo covers the latest revision of the manuscript for the manuals titled *Lisa Theory of Operations* (LTOO) and *Lisa Hardware Manual* (LHM). The LHM includes:

- o Chapters 1, 2, and 3 only,
- o Condensed Preface
- o No appendixes.

The LTOO manual will include everything in the version before you, schematics in the appendixes, and a complete index.

Background

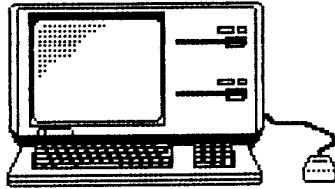
The manuscript was written by a consultant and reviewed by Paul Baker and others. I edited the files to correct the errors and omissions, eliminate ambiguous and inconsistent terminology, and generally clean things up. I used an indented-outline format, which will not be used for the final books, and I added space in the manuscript for line-art, wrote a table of contents, and compiled this version. Time was not spent preparing an index for this draft because it would not be correct for the final books, which will be printed very soon.

The art in this version is the original art, which I hand-edited; line-art will be produced by a consulting firm: CBM. In this manuscript, line-art is not embedded. Instead, a page that provides space for line-art and the figure caption is labeled with an "a" and the original art appears on a separate page labeled "b"; see the table of contents.

Notations in this manuscript

Because the manuscript is written in Pascal, some special notations appear in the text as an instruction to either the typesetter or, should we decide not to typeset the books, to the person who uses LisaWrite to produce camera-ready copy. Following are definitions and examples of the notations, and examples of how the notations will look in the finished books.

1. Over bar: A slash mark followed by a space represents a bar over preceding characters. For example, VMA/ becomes \overline{VMA} , B/L/ becomes $\overline{B/L}$, etc.
2. Binary, Hex, and Base 10: @2, @16, and @10 represent a subscripted 2, 10, or 16. For example, FF@16 becomes FF_{16} , 00E010@16 becomes $00E010_{16}$, etc.
3. Multiplication sign: An exclamation point followed by a period, (!.), represents a raised multiplication sign. For example, SLOT/!.A20/!.A19 becomes $SLOT/\cdot A20/\cdot A19$



Apple Lisa Computer 1983 - 1985

Lisa Theory of Operations

WARNING: This equipment has been certified to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device, pursuant to Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules. Only peripherals (computer input/output devices, terminals, printers, and the like) certified to comply with the Class B limits may be attached to this computer. Operation with noncertified peripherals is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception.

{copyright notice}

CONTENTS

| | |
|--|-------|
| Preface | xiii |
| | |
| Chapter 1. Architecture _____ | 1- 1 |
| 1.1 Layout | 1- 1 |
| 1.2 Hardware Structure | 1- 3a |
| 1.3 The Central Processing Unit | 1- 4 |
| 1.4 Memory | 1- 5a |
| 1.5 Internal Buses | 1- 7 |
| 1.6 Data Storage Media | 1- 8 |
| 1.7 User Interfaces | 1- 8 |
| 1.8 Additional Features | 1- 8 |
| | |
| Chapter 2. Programming _____ | 2- 1 |
| 2.1 The Instruction Set | 2- 1 |
| 2.2 CPU Registers and Their Use | 2- 2 |
| 2.3 Memory Management Scheme | 2- 2 |
| 2.3.1 Address Transformation | 2- 4 |
| 2.3.2 The MMU Registers | 2- 5a |
| 2.3.3 MMU Initialization | 2- 8 |
| 2.3.4 Contexts | 2- 9 |
| 2.4 Addressing i Special I/O Space | 2-10 |
| 2.5 I/O Map | 2-10 |
| 2.5.1 Floppy Disk Control | 2-11 |
| 2.5.2 Serial Port Control | 2-15 |
| 2.5.3 Parallel Port Control | 2-16 |
| 2.5.4 Keyboard/Mouse Control | 2-18 |
| 2.5.5 Processor Board Control | 2-25 |
| 2.6 Interrupt Handling | 2-26 |
| 2.7 Error Processing | 2-28 |
| 2.8 Status Register | 2-29 |
| | |
| Chapter 3. Internal Specifications _____ | 3- 1 |
| 3.1 Packaging | 3- 1 |
| 3.2 Specifications | 3- 3a |
| 3.2.1 Environmental | 3- 4 |
| 3.2.2 Physical | 3 -4 |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------|
| 3.2.3 | Electrical | 3- 4 |
| 3.3 | Modules | 3- 5 |
| 3.1.1 | Cabinet | 3- 5 |
| 3.3.2 | Power Supply | 3- 6a |
| 3.3.3 | Floppy-Disk Drives | 3- 6a |
| 3.3.4 | Printed Circuit Boards | 3- 7 |
| 3.3.5 | Keyboard and Mouse Assemblies | 3- 7 |
| 3.4 | Expansion Bus | 3- 7 |
| 3.4.1 | Bus Signal List | 3- 8 |
| 3.4.2 | Bus Signal Descriptions | 3- 9 |
| 3.4.3 | Bus Parameters | 3-12 |
| 3.4.4 | Bus Timing | 3-13 |
| 3.4.5 | DMA Scheme | 3-15a |
| 3.4.6 | Bootstrap Protocol | 3-16 |
| 3.5 | The External Ports | 3-19 |
| 3.5.1 | Serial Port Interface | 3-20 |
| 3.5.2 | Parallel Interface Port | 3-20 |
| 3.5.3 | The Mouse Interface | 3-22 |
| 3.5.4 | The Keyboard Interface | 3-23 |
| 3.5.5 | Composite Video Interface | 3-23 |
| Chapter 4. The Processor Board | | 4- 1 |
| 4.1 | Processor Board Block Diagram | 4- 1 |
| 4.1.1 | CPU Access to Memory | 4- 3 |
| 4.1.2 | Video Access to Memory | 4- 4a |
| 4.1.3 | CPU Access to I/O | 4- 5a |
| 4.1.4 | I/O Access to DMA Address Latch | 4- 6a |
| 4.1.5 | I/O Access to Memory (DMA) | 4- 7a |
| 4.2 | Instruction Cycle and Timing | 4- 9a |
| 4.2.1 | Internal Timing | 4- 9a |
| 4.2.2 | Memory Management Timing | 4-10 |
| 4.2.3 | Memory Timing | 4-12 |
| 4.2.4 | Video Timing | 4-14a |
| 4.3 | The Central Processing Unit (CPU) | 4-15a |
| 4.3.1 | Clock Generation | 4-16a |
| 4.3.2 | Processor Control Signals | 4-17 |
| 4.3.3 | Address and Data Lines | 4-17 |
| 4.3.4 | Bootstrap ROM | 4-18 |
| 4.4 | The Memory Magement Unit (MMU) | 4-18 |
| 4.4.1 | MMU RAM Storage | 4-20 |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| 4.4.2 | SOR and SLR Initialization | 4-23 |
| 4.4.3 | Address Translation | 4-24 |
| 4.4.4 | Memory Timing Generation | 4-25 |
| 4.5 | Video Control | 4-26 |
| 4.5.1 | Video Address Counter | 4-27 a |
| 4.5.2 | Video Data Shift Register | 4-27 a |
| 4.5.3 | Video State Machine | 4-28 |
| 4.5.4 | Video Page Register | 4-29 |
| 4.6 | Bus Interfaces | 4-29 |
| 4.6.1 | System Bus Interface | 4-30 a |
| 4.6.2 | Memory Bus Interface | 4-33 |
| 4.6.3 | The Video Interface | 4-34 |
| 4.7 | Decode and Latches | 4-35 |
| 4.7.1 | I/O Decode | 4-35 |
| 4.7.2 | Processor Board Control Register | 4-36 |
| 4.7.3 | Memory Error Address Latch | 4-37 |
| 4.7.4 | Processor Board Status Latch | 4-37 |
| 4.7.5 | Time Delay Logic | 4-38 |
| Chapter 5. Memory Boards | | 5- 1 |
| 5.1 | Memory Block Diagram | 5- 2 a |
| 5.2 | Row and Column Addressing | 5- 3 |
| 5.2.1 | Address Lines | 5- 3 |
| 5.2.2 | Slot Decode | 5- 3 |
| 5.2.3 | Matrix Device Decode | 5- 4 |
| 5.2.4 | Matrix Address Strokes | 5- 5 |
| 5.3 | Data and Parity | 5- 6 |
| 5.3.1 | Memory Data Lines | 5- 6 |
| 5.3.2 | Memory Parity | 5- 7 |
| 5.3.3 | Memory Refresh | 5- 7 |
| 5.4 | Memory Timing | 5- 9 a |
| 5.4.1 | Row Selection Timing | 5- 9 a |
| 5.4.2 | Address Multiplex Timing | 5-10 a |
| 5.4.3 | Data and Parity Timing | 5-11 a |
| Chapter 6. The I/O Board | | 6- 1 |
| 6.1 | I/O Board Block Diagram | 6- 1 |
| 6.2 | Floppy-Disk Controller | 6- 2 a |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|-------|
| 6.2.1 | Processor and Memory | 6- 4 |
| 6.2.2 | System Bus Interface | 6- 6 |
| 6.2.3 | Timing Generation | 6- 6 |
| 6.2.4 | Disk State Machine | 6- 9a |
| 6.2.5 | Stepper Motor Control | 6-11 |
| 6.2.6 | General Drive Control | 6-11 |
| 6.3 | Floppy-Disk Controller Operation | 6-12 |
| 6.3.1 | Disk Processor Operation | 6-32a |
| 6.3.2 | Disk Macro Commands | 6-34 |
| 6.3.3 | Data Encoding and Decoding | 6-37 |
| 6.3.4 | Disk Formatting | 6-38a |
| 6.3.5 | Disk State Machine Operation | 6-41 |
| 6.4 | The Serial I/O Controller | 6-45 |
| 6.4.1 | The Serial-Port Controller | 6-45 |
| 6.4.2 | The Serial Ports | 6-46 |
| 6.4.3 | Baud Rate Generation | 6-46 |
| 6.4.4 | Serial Port Operation | 6-46 |
| 6.5 | Parallel-Port Controller | 6-46 |
| 6.5.1 | 68000 Bus Interface for the Parallel-Port Controller | 6-47 |
| 6.5.2 | Parallel Port Interface | 6-47 |
| 6.5.3 | Parallel Port Operation | 6-49 |
| 6.5.4 | Parallel Port Timing | 6-49 |
| 6.6 | The Keyboard/Mouse Controller | 6-49 |
| 6.6.1 | 68000 Bus Interface for the Keyboard/Mouse Controller | 6-49 |
| 6.6.2 | The COPS Processor | 6-50 |
| 6.6.3 | Keyboard/Mouse Interface | 6-51 |
| 6.6.4 | Software On-Off and Reset Logic | 6-52a |
| 6.6.5 | Other Control Lines | 6-52a |
| 6.7 | Miscellaneous Logic | 6-53 |
| 6.7.1 | Speaker Volume Control | 6-53 |
| 6.7.2 | Battery Supply and Control | 6-54 |
| 6.7.3 | Video Contrast Latch | 6-55 |
| Chapter 7. The Video Board | | 7- 1 |
| 7.1 | Block Diagram | 7- 1 |
| 7.2 | Power Supply Circuits | 7- 2a |
| 7.2.1 | The +12 VDC and +5 VDC Supplies | 7- 3 |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 7.2.2 | The +33 VDC Supply | 7- 3 |
| 7.3 | The Video-Amplifier Circuit | 7- 3 |
| 7.3.1 | Video-Data Input and Contrast Control | 7- 4 |
| 7.3.2 | Cathode Drive Circuit | 7- 4 |
| 7.4 | Vertical Deflection Circuit | 7- 5 |
| 7.4.1 | Vertical Deflection Oscillator | 7- 5 |
| 7.4.2 | Vertical Voltage Amplifier | 7- 5 |
| 7.4.3 | Vertical Power Amplifier | 7- 6 |
| 7.4.4 | Bootstrap Circuit | 7- 7 |
| 7.5 | Horizontal Deflection Circuits | 7- 7 |
| 7.5.1 | Horizontal Input Circuit | 7- 7 |
| 7.5.2 | Horizontal Sweep Amplifier | 7- 8 |
| 7.5.3 | Horizontal Deflection | 7- 8 |
| 7.5.4 | Horizontal Flyback | 7- 9 |
| 7.5.5 | Overvoltage Crowbar | 7- 9 |
| 7.5.6 | Brightness and Focus | 7- 9 |
| Chapter 8. User Interfaces | | 8- 1 |
| 8.1 | The CRT | 8- 1 |
| 8.2 | The Keyboard | 8- 1 |
| 8.2.1 | Keyboard Logic | 8- 1 |
| 8.2.2 | Keyboard Timing | 8- 3 |
| 8.2.3 | Keyboard Interface | 8- 3 |
| 8.3 | The Mouse | 8- 4a |
| 8.3.1 | Internal Components | 8- 4a |
| 8.3.2 | The Mouse Interface | 8- 5a |
| 8.4 | Other User Controls | 8- 6 |
| 8.4.1 | The On-Off Switch | 8- 6 |
| 8.4.2 | The RESET Switch | 8- 6 |
| 8.4.3 | The Speaker | 8- 6 |
| 8.4.4 | The Composite Video Output | 8- 7 |
| Chapter 9. Floppy-Disk Drives | | 9- 1 |
| 9.1 | Specifications | 9- 1 |
| 9.1.1 | Media | 9- 1 |
| 9.1.2 | Speed | 9- 1 |
| 9.1.3 | Electrical | 9- 1 |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 9.1.4 | Environmental | 9- 2a |
| 9.2 | Drive Block Diagram | 9- 2a |
| 9.3 | Drive Interface | 9- 2a |
| 9.3.1 | Drive-Interface Signals | 9- 3 |
| 9.3.2 | Drive-Interface Timing | 9- 3 |
| 9.4 | Basic Drive Operation | 9- 5 |
| 9.4.1 | Inserting and Removing Disks | 9- 5 |
| 9.4.2 | Loading Disk Heads | 9- 6 |
| 9.4.3 | Positioning Heads | 9- 6 |
| 9.4.4 | Data Read/Write | 9- 7 |
| Chapter 10. User Interfaces | | 10- 1 |
| 10.1 | Power Supply Block Diagram | 10- 2 |
| 10.2 | AC Input Circuits | 10- 3a |
| 10.2.1 | AC Line Connection | 10- 4 |
| 10.2.2 | On-Off Control | 10- 4 |
| 10.2.3 | Primary Rectification | 10- 4 |
| 10.3 | The Flyback Oscillator | 10- 5a |
| 10.3.1 | Flyback Starting Bias | 10- 6 |
| 10.3.2 | Flyback Oscillator Operation | 10- 6 |
| 10.3.3 | Flyback Control Circuit | 10- 7a |
| 10.4 | DC Output Circuitry | 10- 9 |
| 10.4.1 | DC Voltage Outputs | 10- 9 |
| 10.4.2 | DC Voltage Controls | 10-10 |
| 10.5 | Standby and Auxiliary Video Circuits | 10-11 |
| 10.5.1 | The Standby Supply | 10-11 |
| 10.5.2 | The Video Controls | 10-11 |
| Chapter 11. Assemblies | | 11- 1 |
| 11.1 | User-Replaceable Components | 11- 1 |
| 11.2 | CRT Assembly | 11- 2 |
| 11.2.1 | CRT Access | 11- 2 |
| 11.2.2 | Deflection Yoke | 11- 3 |
| 11.2.3 | Video Board | 11- 3 |
| 11.2.3 | Flyback Transformer | 11- 4 |
| 11.3 | Cabling | 11- 5 |
| 11.3.1 | Power Cabling | 11- 5 |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|--------|--------------------------|-------|
| 11.3.2 | Disk Cabling | 11- 6 |
| 11.3.3 | Interface Connections | 11- 7 |
| 11.3.4 | Logic Connections | 11- 7 |
| 11.4 | Disk Drive Assembly | 11- 7 |
| 11.5 | Miscellaneous Assemblies | 11- 7 |
| 11.5.1 | Speaker Assembly | 11- 8 |
| 11.5.2 | On-Off Switch Assembly | 11- 8 |
| 11.5.3 | Motherboard Assembly | 11- 8 |
| 11.6 | Keyboard and Mouse | 11- 9 |
| 11.6.1 | Keyboard Assembly | 11- 9 |
| 11.6.2 | Mouse Assembly | 11-10 |

Appendixes

*NOT
HERE*

| | | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|------|
| Appendix A. | Processor Board Schematic | A- 1 |
| Appendix B. | Memory Board Schematic | B- 1 |
| Appendix C. | I/O Board Schematic | C- 1 |
| Appendix D. | Video Board Schematic | D- 1 |
| Appendix E. | Keyboard Schematic | E- 1 |
| Appendix F. | Power Supply Schematic | F- 1 |
| Appendix G. | Motherboard Schematics | G- 1 |
| Appendix H. | Keyboard Layouts | H- 1 |
| Appendix I. | Video Assembly Schematic | I- 1 |
| Appendix J. | Radio and Television Interference | J- 1 |

| | |
|----------|------|
| Glossary | G- 1 |
|----------|------|

| | |
|------------------------|------|
| Index <i>Continued</i> | I- 1 |
|------------------------|------|

List of Figures

| | | |
|-----|------------------------------|-------|
| 1-1 | Front View | 1- 2a |
| 1-2 | Back View with Panel Removed | 1- 2b |
| 1-3 | Block Diagram | 1- 3b |
| 1-4 | Processor Block Diagram | 1- 5b |
| 1-5 | Physical Memory Map | 1- 7 |
| 2-1 | Address Word Decode | 2- 3b |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|------|------------------------------------|--------|
| 2-2 | Segment Limit Check | 2- 5b |
| 2-3 | Special I/O Addressing | 2- 6 |
| 2-4 | MMU Access Control Bits | 2- 7 |
| 2-5 | I/O Space Overview | 2-11 |
| 2-6 | Floppy-Disk Commands | 2-12 |
| 2-7 | Floppy-Disk Command Block | 2-13 |
| 2-8 | Floppy-Disk Controller Error Codes | 2-14 |
| 2-9 | Floppy-Disk Interrupt Source | 2-15 |
| 2-10 | Serial Port Baud Rates | 2-16 |
| 2-11 | Parallel Port Bit Correspondance | 2-17 |
| 2-12 | Parallel Port Addressing | 2-18 |
| 2-13 | Keyboard and Mouse Addressing | 2-19 |
| 2-14 | Keyboard COPS Commands | 2-20 |
| 2-15 | Keyboard Codes | 2-21b |
| 2-16 | Keyboard COPS Reset Codes | 2-23 |
| 2-17 | Processor Board Control Addressing | 2-26 |
| 2-18 | Exception Vector Table | 2-27 |
| 2-19 | Status Register | 2-30 |
| | | |
| 3-1 | Modules in Cabinet | 3- 3b |
| 3-2 | Cabinet Assembly | 3- 6b |
| 3-3 | Signal Pin Layout | 3- 9 |
| 3-4 | Expansion Bus Read-Timing Diagram | 3-14 b |
| 3-5 | Expansion Bus Write-Timing Diagram | 3-15b |
| 3-6 | Bootstrap ROM Format | 3-17 |
| 3-7 | Serial Port Pin Assignments | 3-20 |
| 3-8 | Parallel Port Pin Assignments | 3-21 |
| 3-9 | Mouse Interface Pin Assignment | 3-23 |
| | | |
| 4-1 | Processor-Board Block Diagram | 4- 2b |
| 4-2 | CPU Access To Memory | 4- 4b |
| 4-3 | Video Access To Memory | 4- 5b |
| 4-4 | CPU Access To I/O | 4- 6b |
| 4-5 | I/O Access To DMA Address Latch | 4- 7b |
| 4-6 | I/O Access To Memory (DMA) | 4- 8b |
| 4-7 | Processor Board Internal Timing | 4- 9b |
| 4-8 | MMU Timing Diagram | 4-11b |
| 4-9 | Memory Control Timing Diagram | 4-13b |
| 4-10 | Video Control Timing Diagram | 4-14b |
| 4-11 | Video Page Timing | 4-15b |
| 4-12 | Processor Board Timing Generation | 4-16b |
| 4-13 | MMU Block Diagram | 4-19b |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| 4-14 | MMU Memory Configuration | 4-21b |
| 4-15 | Video Control Block Diagram | 4-27b |
| 4-16 | Processor Board Bus Interfaces | 4-30b |
| 5-1 | Memory Block Diagram | 5- 2b |
| 5-2 | Memory Address Decoding | 5- 4 |
| 5-3 | Memory Refresh Pattern | 5- 8 |
| 5-4 | Memory Timing Diagram | 5- 9b |
| 5-5 | Memory Row Address Timing | 5-10b |
| 5-6 | Memory Data and Parity Timing | 5-11b |
| 6-1 | I/O Board Block Diagram | 6- 2b |
| 6-2 | Floppy-Disk Controller Block Diagram | 6- 3b |
| 6-3 | Floppy-Disk Controller Address Space | 6- 5b |
| 6-4 | Floppy-Disk Counter Timing States | 6- 7b |
| 6-5 | Disk State Machine | 6- 9b |
| 6-6 | Floppy-Disk Controller Commands | |
| | a. Handshake | 6-13 |
| | b. Read | 6-14 |
| | c. Write | 6-15 |
| | d. Unclamp | 6-16 |
| | e. Format | 6-17 |
| | f. Verify | 6-18 |
| | g. Format Track | 6-19 |
| | h. Verify Track | 6-20 |
| | i. Read Brute Force | 6-21 |
| | j. Write Brute Force | 6-22 |
| | k. Clamp | 6-23 |
| | l. Seek | 6-24 |
| | m. User Program | 6-25 |
| | n. Clear Interrupt Status | 6-26 |
| | o. Drive Enable | 6-27 |
| | p. Drive Disable | 6-28 |
| | q. ROM Wait | 6-29 |
| | r. Go Away | 6-30 |
| 6-7 | Floppy-Disk Macro Command Flowchart | 6-31b |
| 6-8 | Floppy-Disk Controller I/O Block | 6-32b |
| 6-9 | Floppy-Disk Controller Error Codes | 6-37 |
| 6-10 | Floppy-Disk Data Encoding Scheme | 6-38b |
| 6-11 | Lisa Disk Format | 6-39b |

CONTENTS, continued

| | | |
|------|---------------------------------|--------|
| 6-12 | Seek Flowchart | 6-43b |
| 6-13 | Keyboard Data Format and Timing | 6-52b |
| 7-1 | Video Board Block Diagram | 7- 2b |
| 8-1 | North American Keyboard Layout | 8- 2b |
| 8-2 | Keyboard Interface | 8- 4b |
| 8-3 | Mouse Movement Waveforms | 8- 5b |
| 9-1 | Drive Block Diagram | 9- 2b |
| 9-2 | Drive-Interface Signals | 9- 3 |
| 9-3 | Carriage Movement Timing | 9- 4b |
| 10-1 | Supply Current Output | 10- 1 |
| 10-2 | Power Supply Block Diagram | 10- 3b |
| 10-3 | Flyback Oscillator Circuit | 10- 5b |
| 10-4 | Flyback Oscillator Waveforms | 10- 7b |
| 10-5 | Flyback Control Block Diagram | 10- 8b |

PREFACE [condensed version]

The Lisa Hardware Manual provides information on the functional performance and general specifications of the Lisa. Chapter 1 provides a general introduction to the Lisa and gives a brief description of the architecture.

Chapter 2 is of interest to programmers who need to know the address and interrupt structure, as well as the operation of the memory mapping unit. Chapter 3 provides dimensions, environmental requirements, and interfaces that are useful to design engineers wishing to interface to the Lisa.

Following are other manuals that relate to the Lisa.

- o Lisa Owner's Guide
- o Lisa Theory of Operations
- o Profile Owner's Manual
- o Operating System Reference Manual for the Lisa.
- o *Lisa Repair Manual (provided to dealer service departments)*

PREFACE [expanded version]

The Lisa Theory of Operations manual provides a detailed description of the functional operation of the Lisa hardware. Chapter 1 provides a general introduction to the Lisa and gives a brief description of the architecture.

Chapter 2 is of interest to programmers who need to know the address and interrupt structure, and the operation of the memory mapping unit. Chapter 3 provides dimensions, environmental requirements, and interfaces that are useful to design engineers wishing to interface to the Lisa.

Chapters 4 through 11 contain complete functional descriptions and theory of operation for each module in the Lisa. These chapters will not be of interest to the general reader; they are intended for use only by design and service personnel. Included is information on the:

- o Processor board
- o Memory board
- o I/O board
- o Video board
- o User interface
- o Floppy-disk drives
- o Power supply
- o Assembly.

Schematics for all modules are located in the appendixes. Other relevant documents include the:

- o Lisa Owner's Guide
- o Operating System Reference Manual for the Lisa.
- o Profile Owner's Manual
- o Motorola 68000 User's Manual
- o Motorola 6504 User's Manual
- o Motorola 6522 Data Sheet
- o COPS421 User's Manual
- o 8530 SCC User's Manual
- o AMD 9512 Data Sheet.

CHAPTER 1. ARCHITECTURE

The Lisa is a powerful, compact personal computer. It features an integral screen, disk storage, and a large amount of memory. In addition, you can add an extensive mix of input and/or output (I/O) devices. Perhaps the most striking hardware feature is the mouse, which the operator uses to communicate with the Lisa software.

Details of the operation and use of the Lisa can be found elsewhere; see the Preface for a list of related documents. This manual provides an exhaustive description of the internal workings of the Lisa for those who need to diagnose, repair, or expand one.

1.1 Layout

The Lisa consists of a cabinet that houses the screen, removeable hardware modules, and two floppy-disk drives, and a detachable keyboard and mouse that plug into the front and back of the cabinet, respectively.

Figure 1-1 presents a front view of the Lisa. Figure 1-2 shows the connectors and controls on the back of the Lisa.

The hardware modules inside the cabinet are accessed by removing the front and back panels. Note that removing these panels causes the Lisa to turn off due to the panel safety interlocks. Also note that this does not remove power from the Lisa; to remove power, unplug the line cord.

Chapter 3 describes the assembly of removeable hardware modules in detail. Assembly and disassembly procedures are available in other Lisa documents; see the Preface for a list of related documents.

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

*data /pp.
add collouts*

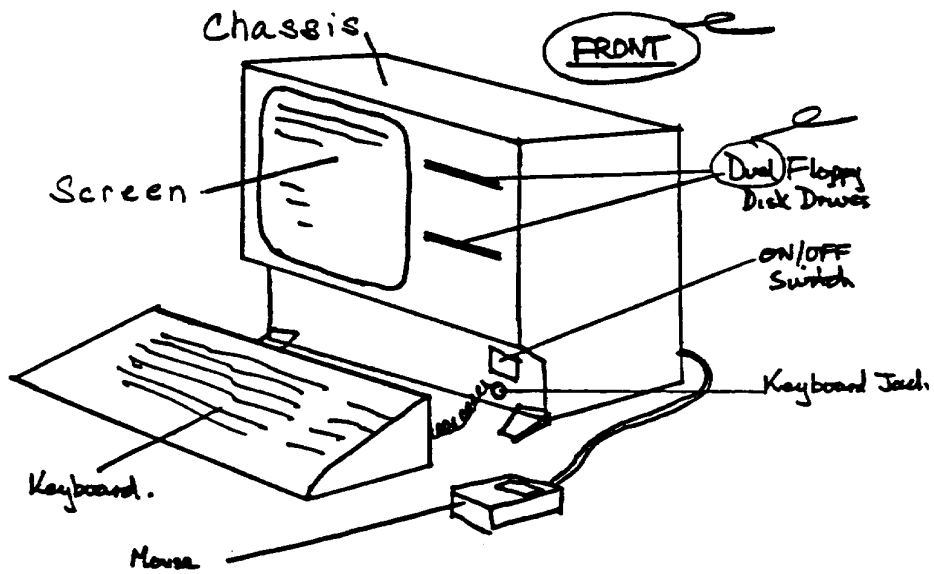


photo #

Figure 1-1. System Front View

1-2A

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

*foto / p.p.
add collouts*

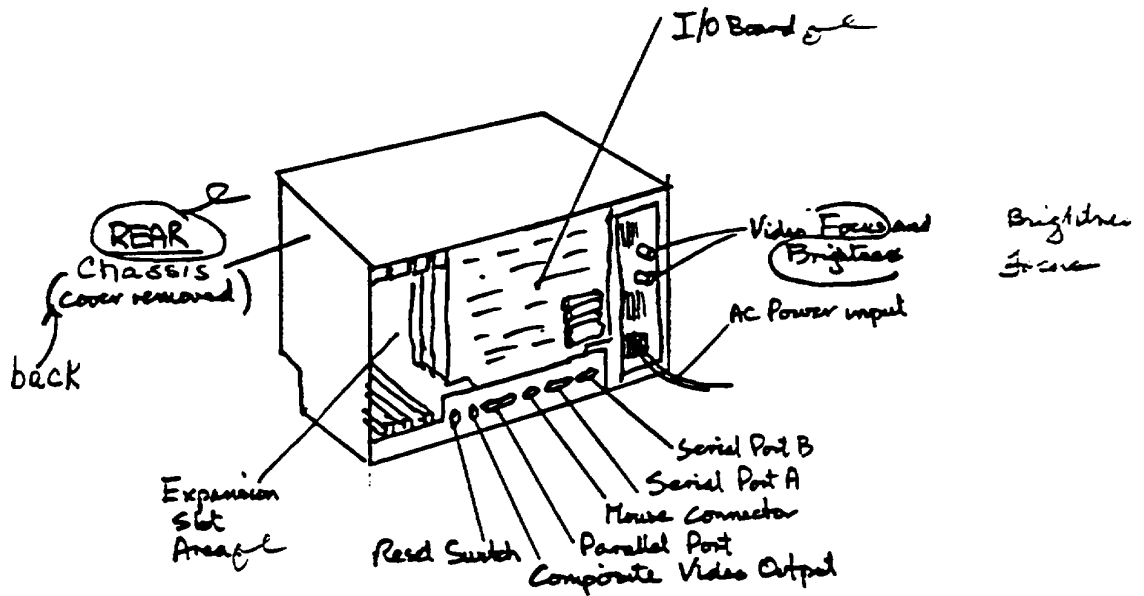


Figure 1-2. System Back Rear View with Panel Removed

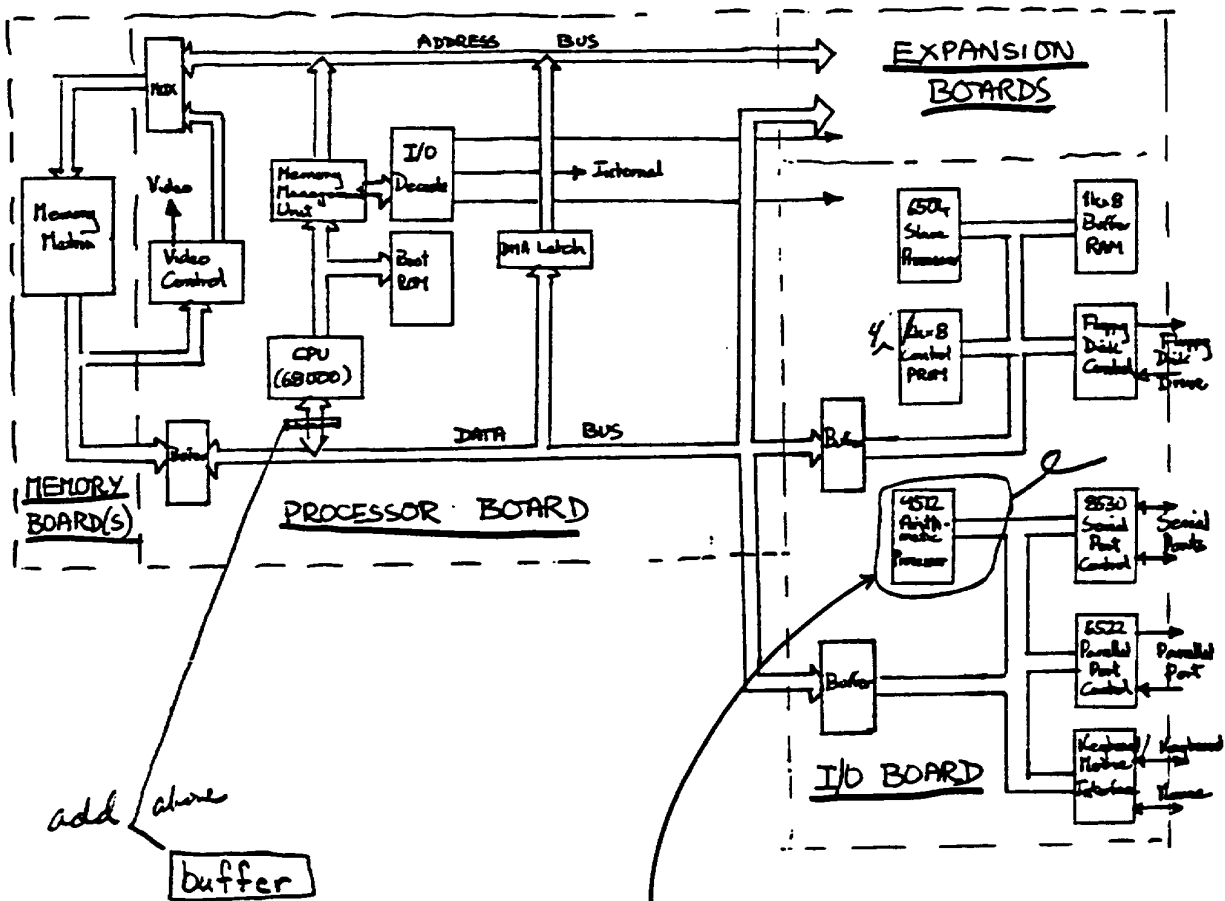
1.2 Hardware Structure

The logic components of the Lisa are interconnected by several buses, as shown in Figure 1-3. The main bus connects the processor board with the I/O board and the expansion slots.

Figure 1-3. Block Diagram

The heart of the Lisa is the processor board; it contains the central processing unit (CPU), timing, memory management unit (MMU), video generation logic, I/O decode and interrupt logic. It also provides the necessary control and timing signals for the memory boards. The memory boards can be in several possible configurations, depending on the size and type of memory installed. The memory board contains the main random access memory (RAM) matrix, plus parity generation and checking, and some address decoding logic.

The Lisa communicates with the outside world principally



Why did Apple not want a Math chip? It sure could work nice!

Figure 1-3. System Block Diagram

1-68

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

through the I/O board. This board provides controllers and interfaces for:

- * Two serial I/O ports,
- * A parallel port for peripherals, such as a hard disk or printer,
- * Keyboard,
- * Mouse,
- * Speaker, and
- * Floppy-disk drives.

Video contrast is also controlled by this board. In addition, the CPU may have the use of an optional arithmetic processing unit, located on the I/O board. (?)

The video board is controlled both by the logic present on the processor board and by the contrast latch on the I/O board. It provides the analog logic necessary to drive the video monitor. The video memory is used to display an image organized as a bit map in main memory.

The expansion slots on the motherboard provide locations for additional logic modules. A description of the bus interface itself can be found in Chapter 3 of this manual.

The disk drives accept standard Fileware diskettes. The diskettes are described in a separate manual; see the Preface for a list of related documents. An overview of the disk drives is given in Chapter 9. Details of the disk drives can be found in the relevant disk drive manual; see the Preface.

The monitor is a high-resolution twelve-inch diagonal monochrome cathode-ray tube (CRT) that uses a 60 hertz (Hz) refresh rate. It displays individual pixels as black or white only. There is no gray scale as such; grays are displayed by intermixing black and white pixels in the same area.

1.3 The Central Processing Unit

The Lisa's central processor is based on the Motorola 68000 processor chip. A block diagram of the 68000 is shown in Figure 1-4. The 68000 provides:

- * 32-bit data and address registers
- * 16 megabyte (Mbyte) addressing range
- * Memory-mapped I/O
- * 14 addressing modes.

In addition to the seventeen 32-bit registers, a 32-bit program counter, and a 16-bit status register, there exists the possibility of configuring the general purpose registers to allow for the width of the data actually being used.

In the Lisa, the 68000 is driven by a 5 megahertz (MHz) clock with a period of 200 nanoseconds (ns). The processor memory access time is 800 ns. The CPU and the video logic interleave memory accesses. Instruction execution times must be a multiple of 800 ns. All instructions that are longer than 800 ns have wait states inserted if required, so that all instructions execute in multiples of 800 ns.

Figure 4. Processor Block Diagram

1.4 Memory

The 68000 CPU generates 24-bit logical addresses to access data in the Lisa. These are considered logical addresses and the set of all possible addresses is the 16 Mbyte logical address space of the Lisa. The logical address space is used to access all random access memory, ROM or RAM, and I/O present in the Lisa.

In order to access one of these physical locations, each logical address must be translated into a physical address. A physical address can point to one of the three possible physical address spaces in the Lisa.

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

P.P.

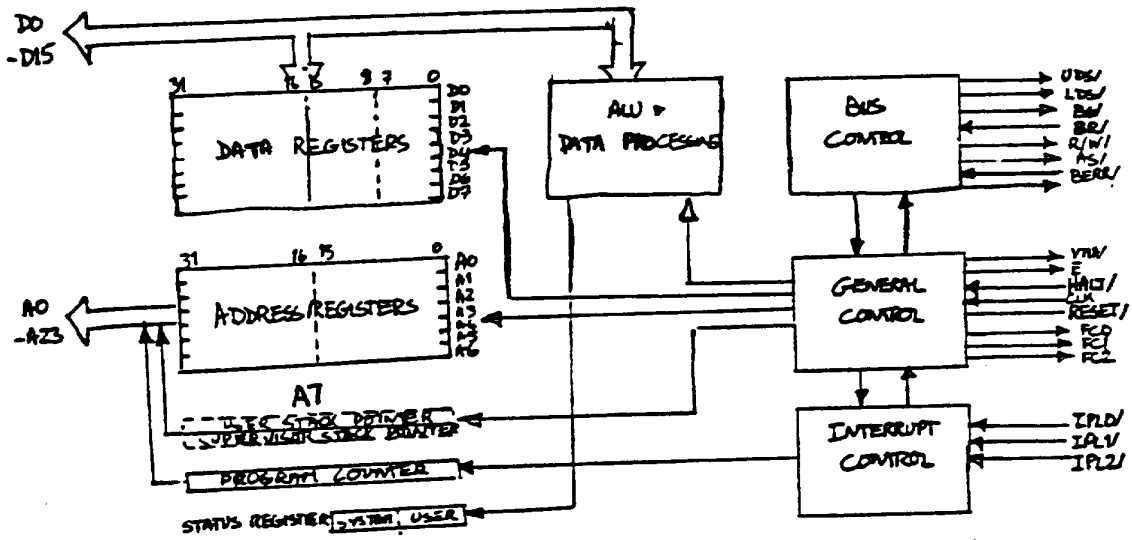


Figure 1-4. Processor Block Diagram

These are:

- * Main memory, 2 Mbytes of RAM,
- * I/O space, I/O devices and latches,
- * Special I/O, MMU registers and boot ROM.

The translation is performed by a method known as relocation. It is implemented by a section of logic on the processor board known as the MMU.

The main memory is where programs and data are stored while in use by the Lisa. The MMU provides both the translation of the address and flags that provide further information on the type and accessibility of the data. This is described in section 2.3

The I/O space is used to access peripheral controllers and status and control registers. The special I/O space is used to access bootstrap routines stored in non-volatile ROM and also to access the registers internal to the MMU where translation data is stored. The MMU internal registers permit the operating system to control the entire relocation process.

Within the MMU there are four identical sets of translation registers, each representing a different mapping of logical addresses into the three physical address spaces. Each set is called a context.

Context 0 is reserved for use by the operating system, while 1, 2 and 3 are available for the operator, who is also referred to as the "user," programs. Only one context is current at any given time. By switching contexts, rapid switching between processes can be affected under user control.

User programs only need to be aware which segments of logical space are available to them and which of these point to RAM and to valid I/O addresses. The MMU performs access checks and classifies the type of storage that they point to, such as stack memory, ROM, and I/O space.

The maximum configuration of RAM storage that can be present in the main memory is 2 Mbytes. Each physical memory space within the Lisa is divided as shown in Figure 1-5. ✓

Special I/O space is not invoked during normal operation. It is used during startup, and when the registers that configure the MMU are being modified. During normal operation, only the operating system has access to special I/O space. Note that the operating

system is capable of providing this ability to any program, although it would not be an advisable practice to do so.

Since logical addresses make no distinction among the three possible address spaces, each can be operated on by the full 68000 command set. Each physical address space shown in Figure 1-5 is distinguished by signals generated within the MMU. There is, therefore, no physical overlap of memory space and no masking of any memory area.

| Hexadecimal Address Range | Physical Address Space | Function |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 000000-1FFFFFF | Main Memory | RAM storage |
| 000000-001FFF | I/O | Slot 1 low decode |
| 002000-003FFF | I/O | Slot 1 high decode |
| 004000-005FFF | I/O | Slot 2 low decode |
| 006000-007FFF | I/O | Slot 2 high decode |
| 008000-009FFF | I/O | Slot 3 low decode |
| 00A000-00BFFF | I/O | Slot 3 high decode |
| 00C000-00CFFF | I/O | FD Controller memory |
| 00D000-00DFFF | I/O | I/O board devices |
| 00E000-00EFFF | I/O | CPU board devices |
| xx0000-xx3FFF | Special I/O | Boot & self-test ROM (16K) |

Figure 1-5. Physical Memory Map

1.5 Internal Buses

The Lisa uses two bus structures to communicate between hardware modules, such as the processor board, I/O board, etc. Most boards communicate through the system bus, which interconnects the processor board with the I/O board and the expansion slots.

The system bus is based on the interface signals of the 68000 CPU. Operations and timing on the bus follow those of the 68000 closely, although not identically. Refer to Chapter 4 for a discussion of the system bus and its operation.

The second bus, the memory bus, is a specialized set of signals that are used by the processor board to provide timing and control signals to the memory board(s).

1.6 Data Storage Media

The Lisa contains two high-density mini-floppy disk drives. Disks from non-Lisa computers may not be freely interchanged with those used in the Lisa, due to the special encoding of disks format and media type. Details of the disk drives can be found in Chapter 9 or from the relevant disk drive manual; see the Preface for a list of related documents.

In addition, a compatible hard-disk drive, such as Apple's Profile, can be connected to the parallel port to provide enhanced data storage capacity and access time. Details of this interface can be found in Chapter 3. Format and storage capacity of this drive are a function of the actual unit used. Details are beyond the scope of this document.

1.7 User Interfaces

The user communicates with the Lisa by way of the keyboard, as on a conventional computer, and by using the mouse. In fact, most tasks can be completed without typing.

You can roll the mouse around a small area beside the Lisa to move a cursor around the CRT. Press the button on top of the mouse to select among the available functions displayed on the CRT.

1.8 Additional Features

A real-time clock has been incorporated into the I/O board. The clock keeps the correct time, and is available to the programmer for use in a number of applications where measurement of elapsed time or the current date and time is important.

The Lisa is also equipped with a battery-backup unit. This enables the real-time-clock to function while the Lisa is entirely disconnected from a power source. It also preserves the contents of the parameter memory.

CHAPTER 2. PROGRAMMING

This chapter describes the interface that the Lisa hardware provides to the software. It is not intended as an exhaustive description of the operating system, nor should it be regarded as a specification of required parameters for an operating system on the Lisa. Refer to the Preface for the names of manuals that contain programming details.

2.1 The Instruction Set

The instruction set of the Lisa is essentially that of the 68000 processor. Differences occur only in the details of addressing the memory and I/O in the Lisa. Instructions can be categorized into four possible modes of logical addressing:

- * Data: When an effective address mode refers to data operands, it is considered as a data address mode.
- * Memory: When an effective address mode refers to memory operands, it is considered a memory address mode.
- * Alterable: When an effective address mode is used to refer to writable operands, it is considered an alterable address mode.
- * Control: When an effective address is used to refer to memory operands without an associated size, it is considered a control address mode.

It is possible to combine these categories within the instruction set, resulting in more specialized categories. For example, data alterable refers to address modes that are both data and alterable.

Note that the status register addressing mode is not permitted unless it is explicitly mentioned as a legal addressing mode.

The full instruction set is not discussed here. Details

are available in the 68000 User's Manual.

2.2 CPU Registers and Their Use

There is a 16-bit status register, which consists of a user byte and a system byte. In addition, there are a number of 32-bit registers in the CPU that are available to the user. These are:

- * 8 Data registers
- * 7 Address registers
- * 1 User stack pointer
- * 1 Supervisor stack pointer
- * 1 Program counter.

The status register contains a number of coded bits, divided into a user byte and a supervisor byte. The supervisor byte contains the trace and supervisor flags, plus a three-bit code showing the current interrupt mask. The user byte contains the condition codes. Refer to the 68000 user manual for a full discussion.

The data registers can be used for bit, byte, word, or long-word operations. The address registers can be used as word or long-word registers. Both the address registers and the stack pointer can be used as software stack pointers and base-address registers. All data, address, and stack pointer registers can be used as index registers.

When a data register is used to store less than the full 32-bit capacity, the bit, byte, or word is stored in the low-order part of the register. The least significant bit (LSB) is bit zero and the most significant bit (MSB) is bit 31.

Address registers provide either the low-order word, or the full 32-bit long word, as the source operand, depending on the operation. When used as a destination, the entire register is affected, regardless of the size of the operand required in the operation.

2.3 Memory Management Scheme

The MMU is a hardware device that translates logical addresses emitted by the CPU into physical addresses for objects in main memory or I/O space. At the same time, it provides access controls that are preset by the operating system. These prevent a particular program from accessing areas of memory outside of the portion assigned to it.

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

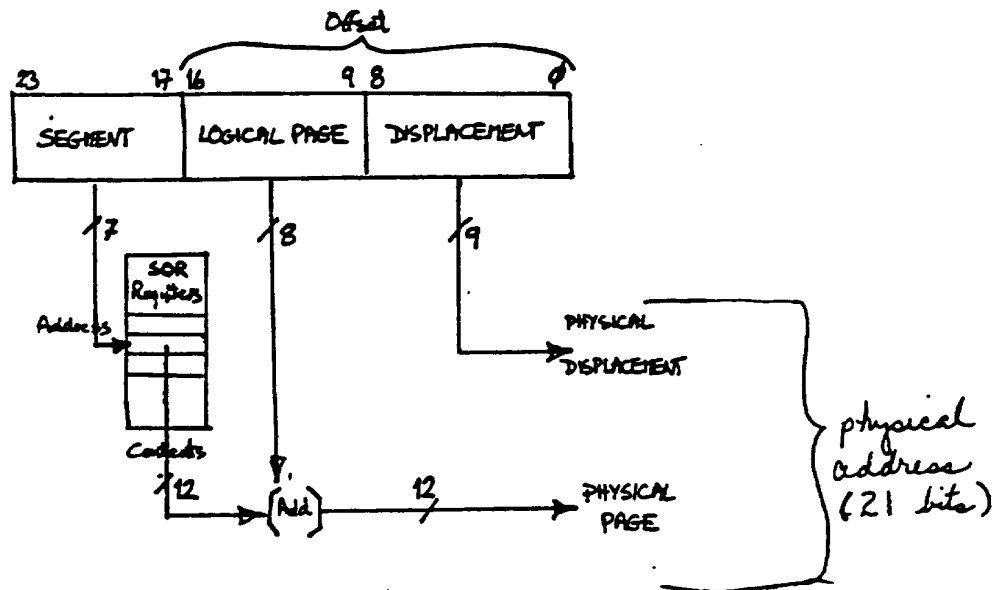


Figure 2-1. Address Word Decode

2-3b

The logical address provided by the CPU consists of 24 bits. These are interpreted by the MMU in three sections. The first section consists of bits 23 through 17 and is the logical segment number. The second section consists of bits 16 through 9 and provides the logical page displacement. The third section consists of bits 8 through 0 and gives the displacement, both logical and physical, within the page. This can be seen in Figure 2-1.

Figure 2-1. Address Word Decode

Logical addresses can point to any part of the 16 Mbyte addressing space. The MMU interprets these logical addresses on the basis of parameters loaded into its registers by the operating system.

The Lisa's memory physically occupies 2 Mbytes of physical address space. This would imply that only 16 segments, each of 128 kilobytes (Kbytes) can be used meaningfully. However, each segment's physical address space does not necessarily occupy the full 128 Kbytes allotted to it in logical address space. Each segment can be mapped into as little as one 512-byte page of physical memory. Therefore many more than 16 logical segments can map into the 2 Mbyte memory space.

Each segment within the MMU has two registers associated

with it. The first is known as the Segment Origin Register (SOR). It describes the physical origin of the segment, which is a page boundary within the memory. The second is the Segment Limit Register (SLR). It describes both the size in terms of 512-byte pages and the type of space being addressed.

Each context in the MMU consists of a table of 128 segment descriptors consisting of the SOR and SLR. The segment number, bits 23-17 of the logical address, is used to index into the table and retrieve the value stored in the SOR and SLR.

2.3.1 Address Transformation

Logical address space is divided into 128 logical segments. Each segment consists of up to 256 pages of 512 bytes per page. Therefore, the maximum segment size is 128 Kbytes and the minimum is 512 bytes.

The SOR register contains the 12-bit page address in physical space where the corresponding physical segment begins. The entire segment is located in physical space with respect to this origin. The logical page displacement given by the second section of the logical address, bits 16-9, is added to the contents of SOR to produce the physical page address being accessed. The logical operation is shown in Figure 2-1. The least significant nine bits of the logical address translate directly into the physical displacement.

The SLR contains the size limit of the physical segment, given as a number of pages, plus control bits that define the type of the segment. This indicates which of the three physical address spaces the segment is contained in: memory, I/O, or special I/O. It can also indicate the memory use, such as read-only or stack.

Once the SOR contents and logical page displacement have been added, the MMU performs a limit check to see whether the resulting physical page lies within the limits given by the SLR. The logical operation performed is shown in Figure 2-2.

The SLR contains control and limit data. The four high-order bits of the register contain control information. The eight low-order bits contain the number of pages in the segment, which is compared with the page offset in the logical address.

If the address is within the physical segment, the access proceeds. If the address lies outside the segment, the access is terminated and an error condition is presented to the CPU.

The physical address word consists of 21 bits. These 21 bits are sufficient to address a space of 2 Mbytes.

Figure 2-2. Segment Limit Check

2.3.2 The MMU Registers

The MMU registers are physically a matrix of 1024 12-bit registers. These are divided into four sets of 128 pairs of registers, one for each of the four contexts in which the Lisa may operate. The technique of switching contexts is used to reconfigure the Lisa rapidly when switching between processes.

All MMU registers are addressed in special I/O space; refer to Figure 1-5. The contents of the SOR are modified or read by accessing an address in special I/O space, as shown in Figure 2-3.

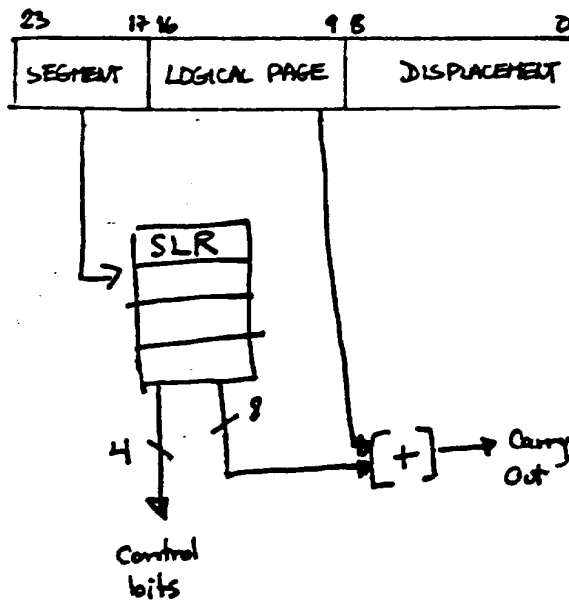


Figure 2-2. Segment Limit Check

2-5b

| Address Bits | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------------|----|-------------|----------|---|--------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| MAPPED (START bit set only) | Segment Address | | | | | | | | | | | Segment Offset | | | | | Displacement | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| RDY | Not Used | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 0 | RDY Address | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SLR | Segment Address | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | 0 | Not Used | | | | | | | | | | | 1 | Segment Length (in pages) | | | | | |
| SDF | Segment Address | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | 1 | 0 | Not Used | | | | | | | | | | | 0 | Segment Base Address (in pages) | | | | |

Figure 2-3. Special I/O Addressing

A segment which was to begin at the physical address

last edited by Pilkington

2-6

31 May 1983 @9am

000200@16 would have its corresponding SOR set to 0001@16. The SOR contains the origin in terms of multiples of 512-byte pages in the physical space.

The segment length is interpreted by the 68000 IN TWO'S COMPLEMENT FORM. Care should therefore be taken in loading the limit to be used. A length of 00 implies a segment of maximum length, 128 Kbytes. A length of FF@16 implies the minimal segment length of 512 bytes, one page.

An exception to the above occurs in the case of a stack segment, which is flagged as such by the control bits. In the case of a stack, usage of the segment begins at the top of the segment and decrements. Thus 00@16 implies one page, 512 bytes, and FF@16 implies 128 Kbytes for a stack segment only.

The access control bits are used to restrict program manipulation of the data pointed to in the area of memory. The bit significance is shown in Figure 2-4.

To set up the MMU registers, the SOR and SLR registers must be set up by the operating system for each of the 128 possible segments.

| Bit | | | | Address space and access limitation |
|-----|----|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Main memory -- read only from stack |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | Main memory -- read only |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | Main memory -- read/write to stack |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Main memory -- read/write |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | I/O space |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | Page invalid (segment not present) |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | Special I/O space |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |) |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |) |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |) Invalid Codes |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |) |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |) (Unpredictable results |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |) will occur) |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |) |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |) |

Figure 2-4. MMU Access Control Bits

2.3.3 MMU Initialization

When the Lisa performs a Power-On Reset (POR), the MMU registers are in an unknown state. In order to write to the MMU registers, the START bit must be set. This is satisfied automatically at power-on time, or by the software accessing I/O address $00E010@16$.

When the START bit is set, bit 14 of the address acts as a switch between special I/O space and other address spaces. During initialization, bit 14 must be 0 to execute from ROM in special I/O space. A 1111@2 code output for the access bits of the SLR registers is provided by hardware in setup mode. The MMU is not needed to address the boot ROM, so the boot program does not require the MMU to be initialized.

The boot ROM initializes the MMU so that physical memory is contiguous and starts at address 0. Accesses higher than the top of physical memory are not allowed except for segment 126 (addresses of the form FCxxxx@16) addresses I/O space, and segment 127 (addresses of the form FExxxx@16) addresses special I/O.

To set the MMU registers, the MMU is disabled. This is done by setting the START bit. This bit is set automatically at power-up when the MMU registers are uninitialized. It must be set whenever the MMU registers are being loaded.

In order that a program in RAM may continue to execute when the START bit is set, a hardware switch is incorporated which permits execution via the MMU. This avoids the need to invoke a subroutine in ROM, which would otherwise be necessary. Address bit 14 controls the switch and the program executing in RAM must execute with address bit 14 set 1.

RAM continues to be accessible via the MMU whenever address bit 14 is high while the START bit is set. Thus, any access to a location whose address has bit 14 set results in the MMU performing an address translation, just as in normal processing. By using this feature, it is possible to access both normal mapped address space, and non-mapped special I/O space under control of program addressing.

A program that alters any of the MMU register contents is typically run only in supervisor mode.

2.3.4 Contexts

To permit fast switching among program environments, the MMU provides four contexts in which programs can run. The context in which the Lisa is currently running is selected by two control bits, SEG1 and SEG2. The operating system typically runs in context 0. User programs execute in one of the other three contexts. When transfer of control to the Lisa and back is required, such as might happen for interrupt handling, the SEG bits are configured to select the new context. Since the MMU has completely independent sets of SOR and SLR registers for each context, context maps are independent of each other.

These bits are located on the processor board and modified as described in subsection 2.5.5. Context is selected by configuring the SEG1 and SEG2 bits to give the required context as shown below:

| SEG2 | SEG1 | Context |
|------|------|---------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 2 |
| 1 | 1 | 3 |

Context 0 is intended for exclusive use of the operating system, while contexts 1, 2, and 3 are intended for general purpose use. The Lisa automatically selects context 0 whenever an access is made in supervisor mode. Thus a TRAP instruction can be used to generate a call from a user process to the operating system.

Normally, the context is changed while executing in supervisor mode. Execution in the new context begins when user mode is entered.

The context is loaded by a read or write to certain addresses in I/O space, as follows:

| | |
|-----------|------------|
| 00E00A@16 | set SEG1 |
| 00E008@16 | reset SEG1 |
| 00E00E@16 | set SEG2 |
| 00E00C@16 | reset SEG2 |

2.4 Addressing in Special I/O Space

In special I/O space, it is misleading to talk in terms of address translation as used in normal memory space. The address in special I/O space has several meanings, depending on the state of bits 14 and 15.

The address is divided into a number of fields. Either the segment number used to address an MMU register will be present in bits 17 thru 23 or a ROM address will be present in bits 1 thru 13, but not both.

The exact significance of the bits is shown in Figure 2-3 above. The format of a word used to alter an MMU register is:

SSSSSS010xxxxxxxxxBxxx

The "S" designates the bits that select the segment for which the registers are to be altered. The "x" indicates a "don't care" condition. The "B" is a 1 to write to the SOR and a 0 to write to the SLR.

When the ROM is to be addressed, the word has the format:

xxxxxxxx00RRRRRRRRRRRRRRR (START bit set)
 OR
 SSSSSS00RRRRRRRRRRRRRRR (via the MMU)

Each "x" bit is ignored. The "S" bits are the address of the segment that points to special I/O space. The "R" bits are used as an address for the boot ROM directly. That is, they are not translated by the MMU.

A program that alters any of the MMU registers should only be run in supervisor mode.

2.5 I/O Map

As outlined in Chapter 1, the Lisa contains memory-mapped I/O and a special I/O space. The special I/O space is invoked at power-up time and during accesses to the MMU registers.

A full list of the I/O addresses within the Lisa is given here, along with the bit significance of the data written to and read from each address. An overview of the full I/O space map is given in Figure 2-5. Note that the best ROM assigns segment 126 to the 110 space, so all accesses to I/O space using the default MMU setup

have a logical address of FCxxxx@16.

| Address (hexadecimal) | Function |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| FC | E2 |
| 000000-001FFF | Expansion slot #1 Low Decode |
| 002000-003FFF | " " " High Decode |
| 004000-005FFF | Expansion slot #2 Low Decode |
| 006000-007FFF | " " " High Decode |
| 008000-009FFF | Expansion slot #3 Low Decode |
| 00A000-00BFFF | " " " High Decode |
| 00C001-00C7FF | Floppy Disk Control (see 2.5.1) |
| 00D000-00D3FF | Serial Ports Control (see 2.5.2) |
| 00D800-00DBFF | Parallel Port Control (see 2.5.3) |
| 00DC00-00DFFF | Keyboard/Mouse Control (see 2.5.4) |
| 00E000-00E01E | CPU board Control (see 2.5.5) |
| 00E01F-00E7FF | (not used) |
| 00E8xx | Video Address Latch |
| 00F0xx | Memory Error Address Latch |
| 00F8xx | Status Register |

\$FCxxxx {

Figure 2-5. I/O Space Overview

2.5.1 Floppy Disk Control

The floppy-disk controller is located on the I/O board and is controlled by addressing the portion of physical I/O space in the range 00C001@16-00C7FF@16. This area contains command and status data as described below.

The floppy-disk controller consists of a 6504 based microcomputer, which has 4 Kbytes of program ROM for its own exclusive use and 1 Kbyte of buffer RAM that is shared with the main CPU. This RAM is provided with power backup by a battery. Parameters stored in the floppy-disk controller RAM are therefore not lost during power down.

The low 16 words of the 6504 address space are treated as a command block. The first byte is used for communication between the CPU and the 6504. The others are used to pass parameters for use in defining command data and status.

Controller commands are written to 00C001@16 and have the significance shown in Figure 2-6.

| Code | Operation |
|-------|---|
| 81@16 | Execute the RWTS routine (parameters are given by FCC003-FCC00F@16) |
| 82@16 | Not used |
| 83@16 | Seek to side/track |
| 84@16 | JSR to routine pointed to by 00C003-5 |
| 85@16 | Clear Interrupt Status |
| 86@16 | Set Interrupt Mask |
| 87@16 | Clear Interrupt Mask |
| 88@16 | Wait in ROM until called to do cold start |
| 89@16 | Loop in ROM |

Figure 2-6. Floppy-Disk Commands

The main part of the 6504 code consists of a Read/Write/Track/Sector (RWTS) routine. This utilizes a command block in the 8 bytes of memory that should be configured by the CPU in accordance with Figure 2-7.

| Address | Operation |
|-----------|---|
| FCC003@16 | Command Code 00@16 Read 01@16 Write 02@16 Unclamp 03@16 Format 04@16 Verify 05@16 Format Track 06@16 Verify Track 07@16 Read (without checksum verify) 08@16 Write (without checksum) |
| FCC005@16 | Drive Select 00@16 Drive 2 (lower) 80@16 Drive 1 (upper) |
| FCC007@16 | Side Select 0x@16 Side 1 (upper) 1x@16 Side 2 (lower) |
| FCC009@16 | Sector Number (0 to 22) |
| FCC00B@16 | Track Number (0 to 44) |
| FCC00D@16 | Speed Byte |
| FCC00F@16 | Format Confirmation Byte |
| FCC011@16 | Error Status |
| FCC013@16 | Disk ID Value |

Figure 2-7. Floppy-Disk Command Block

The disk drives generate an interrupt to the CPU whenever a diskette is inserted or a diskette eject button is pressed. An interrupt is also generated upon completion of an "81@16" command. The status of the controller can be found by examining location 00C05F@16, as shown in Figure 2-8

| ERROR CODES | SIGNIFICANCE |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| 01 (hex) | Invalid Command |
| 02 | Invalid Drive |
| 03 | Invalid Sector |
| 04 | Invalid Side |
| 05 | Invalid Track |
| 06 | Invalid Clear Mask |
| 07 | No Disk |
| 08 | Drive Not Enabled |
| 09 | Interrupts Pending |
| 0A | Invalid Format Confirmation |
| 0B | ROM Selftest Failure |
| 0C | Unexpected IRQ or NMI |
| 14 | Write Protect Error |
| 15 | Unable to Verify |
| 16 | Unable to Clamp |
| 17 | Unable to Read |
| 18 | Unable to Write |
| 19 | Unable to Unclamp |
| 1A | Unable to Find Calibration |
| 1B | Unable to Adjust Speed |
| 1C | Unable to Write Calibration |

Figure 2.8. Floppy-Disk Controller Error Codes

Note that the interrupt flag must first be enabled or a bus error will occur. The enable bit must be high in order to be able to access the floppy RAM that is shared by the floppy-disk controller and the processor board. The interrupt source is identified by this status byte, the bit interpretation being coded according to Figure 2-9.

The disk controller has an area of memory that can be used for CPU storage of parameters. It is located between 00C181@16 and 00C1FF@16.

The memory area used for information transfer to and from the disk controller is shared by the CPU and the 6504 and is located between 00C501@16 and 00C7FF@16.

| Bit | Significance |
|-----|--------------------------------------|
| 7 | Set if bits 4, 5 or 6 set |
| 6 | Set if RWTS complete for Drive 2 |
| 5 | Set when button on Drive 2 is pushed |
| 4 | Set when disk in place on Drive 2 |
| 3 | Set if bits 0, 1 or 2 set |
| 2 | Set if RWTS complete for Drive 1 |
| 1 | Set when button on drive 1 is pushed |
| 0 | Set when disk in place on Drive 1 |

Figure 2-9. Floppy-Disk Interrupt Source

2.5.2 Serial Port Control

The serial logic interface is implemented by a serial communication controller (SCC) dual channel device. Refer to the 8530 serial communication controller manual for details.

The two serial interfaces in the Lisa are accessed via the peripheral control device by accessing four distinct addresses in I/O space, as shown below.

| | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| Channel A | Data: | 00D247@16 |
| | Control: | 00D243@16 |
| Channel B | Data: | 00D245@16 |
| | Control: | 00D241@16 |

The baud rate for each of the two channels is defined in terms of two time constants, which must be loaded into the SCC. The time constants are governed by the formulas:

$$TC(A) = 4,000,000 / (2xBaudrate) - 2$$

$$TC(B) = 3,686,400 / (2xBaudrate) - 2$$

This results in a table of baud rate values shown in Figure 2-10. The serial ports use autovectoring, which eliminates the need for the SCC to supply interrupt vectors to indicate the source of the interrupt to the CPU.

| Baud Rate | Clock Multiplier | TC(A) | Error (%) | TC(B) | Error (%) |
|------------------|------------------|-------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| 19200 | 16 | -- | -- | 4 | 0 |
| 9600 | 16 | 11 | -0.16 | 10 | 0 |
| 4800 | 16 | 24 | -0.16 | 22 | 0 |
| 2400 | 16 | 50 | -0.16 | 46 | 0 |
| 1200 | 16 | 102 | -0.16 | 94 | 0 |
| 300 | 16 | 414 | -0.16 | 382 | 0 |
| 110 | 16 | 1134 | -0.03 | 1045 | 0 |
| 19200 | 1 | 102 | -0.16 | 94 | 0 |
| 9600 | 1 | 206 | -0.16 | 190 | 0 |
| 4800 | 1 | 414 | -0.16 | 382 | 0 |
| 2400 | 1 | 831 | -0.04 | 766 | 0 |
| 1200 | 1 | 1664 | -0.04 | 1534 | 0 |
| 300 | 1 | 6664 | -0.01 | 6142 | 0 |
| 224000(Applebus) | 1 | -- | -- | 6 | 0 |

Figure 2-10. Serial Port Baud Rates

2.5.3 Parallel Port Control

The parallel port is controlled by a 6522 versatile interface adapter (VIA). There is a direct correspondance between the hardware lines on the physical connector and the assigned line within the 6522's two-byte ports. Refer to subsection 3.5.2 for a discussion of the signal lines on the interface. The relationship between the 6522 port bits and the interface signals is shown in Figure 2-11.

| 6522 Controller line | | Parallel Port line | | Pin |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----|
| PA0-PA7 | Peripheral A port | DD0-DD7 | Data Lines | |
| CA2 | Control Line 2 A | PSTRB/ | Processor Strobe | 15 |
| CA1 | Control Line 1 A | BSY | Busy | 16 |
| PB0 | Periph. B Port 0 | OCD | Open Cable Detect | 19 |
| PB1 | Periph. B Port 1 | BSY | Busy | 16 |
| PB2 | Periph. B Port 2 | DEN | Disk Enable | - |
| PB3 | Periph. B Port 3 | DRW | Read/Write | 3 |
| PB4 | Periph. B Port 4 | CMD/ | Command | 17 |
| PB5 | Periph. B Port 5 | DIAGPAR | Diagnostic Parity | - |
| CB2 | Control Line 2 B | PARITY/ | Interface Parity | 18 |
| (PB5) | Keyboard B Port 5 | PRES/ | Parity Reset | - |
| (PB7) | Keyboard B Port 7 | CRES/ | Controller Reset | 21 |
| | See note | CHK | Check | 25 |

Notes: The last three signals are connected to the keyboard 6522.

The BSY signal connects to both the CA1 and PB1 lines.

The check line is encoded by the keyboard interface and produces an independent interrupt and key code D000@2 0101@2, where D is a 1 on a rising edge and a 0 on a falling edge.

Figure 2-11. Parallel Port Bit Correspondance

Note that some bits on this 6522 are used for signals other than those for the parallel port. Also note that two bits for the parallel port are controlled via the keyboard 6522. The programming of the 6522 is described in the 6522 data sheet. The addressing scheme is given in Figure 2-12.

| Address (hexidecimal) | Register # | Function |
|--------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------|
| 00D901 | 0 | ORB/IRB (Input/Output Register) |
| 00D909 | 1 | ORA/IRA (Input/Output Register) |
| 00D911 | 2 | DDRB (Data Direction Register) |
| 00D919 | 3 | DDRA (Data Direction Register) |
| 00D921 | 4 | T1C-L (Low-order Latch/Counter) |
| 00D929 | 5 | T1C-H (High-order Counter) |
| 00D931 | 6 | T1C-L (Low-order Latches) |
| 00D939 | 7 | T1C-H (High-order Latches) |
| 00D941 | 8 | T2C-L (Low-order Latch/Counter) |
| 00D949 | 9 | T2C-H (High-order Counter) |
| 00D951 | 10 | SR (Shift Register) |
| 00D959 | 11 | ACR (Auxiliary Control Register) |
| 00D961 | 12 | PCR (Peripheral Control Register) |
| 00D969 | 13 | IFR (Interrupt Flag Register) |
| 00D971 | 14 | IER (Interrupt Enable Register) |
| 00D979 | 15 | ORA/IRA (as for 1 w/o handshake) |

Figure 2-12. Parallel Port Addressing

If CA1 is in pulse handshake mode and the DEN bit is low, the CA1 line pulses to transfer data to or from the parallel port each time that data is read from or written to the A port. CA1 is fed directly to CA2 to allow latch mode to be used on the A port while data is being read.

The CR/ signal is generated by manipulation of the B port on the keyboard interface. Refer to subsection 2.5.4 for details.

2.5.4 Keyboard/Mouse Control

Keyboard and mouse control are performed by a dedicated slave processor, known as a control-oriented processor system (COPS). It provides communication with four peripheral devices via the A port of the keyboard 6522 VIA port controller. These devices are the:

- * Keyboard
- * Mouse
- * Real-time clock
- * Software power-off.

Commands to these peripherals are written to the A port of the 6522 and data is fetched from the same location. The keyboard and mouse are addressed using the 6522 registers as shown in Figure 2-13.

| Address (hexidecimal) | 6522 Register # | Function |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---|
| 00DD81 | 0 | ORB/IRB |
| 00DD83 | 1 | ORA/IRA |
| 00DD85 | 2 | DDRB |
| 00DD87 | 3 | DDRA |
| 00DD89 | 4 | T1C-L |
| 00DD8B | 5 | T1C-H |
| 00DD8D | 6 | T1C-L |
| 00DD8F | 7 | T1C-H |
| 00DD91 | 8 | T2C-L |
| 00DD93 | 9 | T2C-H |
| 00DD95 | 10 | SR |
| 00DD97 | 11 | ACR |
| 00DD99 | 12 | PCR |
| 00DD9B | 13 | IFR |
| 00DD9D | 14 | IER |
| 00DD9F | 15 | ORA/IRA (Same as in register 1, but without handshake) |

Refer to 6522 Data Sheet for details

Figure 2-13. Keyboard/Mouse Addressing

The abbreviations used in Figure 2-13 refer to registers within the 6522, similar to Figure 2-12. The 6522 is described in the 6522 data sheet.

The command format to the COPS is shown in Figure 2-14.

| Keyboard | |
|--------------|--|
| 6522 PA Port | Function |
| 7654 3210 | |
| ----- | |
| 0000 0000 | Turn I/O port on |
| 0000 0001 | Turn I/O port off |
| 0000 0010 | Read Clock Data |
| 0001 nnnn | Write nnnn to clock |
| 0010 spmm | Set Clock Modes, where: |
| | s=enable (1) or disable (0) clock set mode |
| | p=power on (1) or off (0) |
| | mm = 00 Clock/Timer Disable |
| | 01 Timer Disable |
| | 10 Timer Underflow Interrupt |
| | 11 Timer Underflow Power-On |
| 0101 nnnn | Set NMI character high nibble to nnnn |
| 0110 nnnn | Set NMI character low nibble to nnnn |
| lxxx xxxx | No operation |

Figure 2-14. Keyboard COPS Commands

Note that, in addition to the keyboard and mouse, several other peripherals are interfaced to the Lisa via the keyboard 6522. These are:

- * Two parallel-port lines
- * Three volume-control lines
- * Speaker tone line
- * Floppy-disk interrupt.

The COPS receives power from the backup supply. This voltage is available at all times, whether the Lisa is powered down or even unplugged. The only time the COPS ceases functioning is if the battery is allowed to run down by having the Lisa unplugged over a long period.

This means that the COPS is always operational. It keeps the time of day and provides software control of the power on and off functions.

Keyboard

The keyboard on the Lisa is a true N-key rollover design. An arbitrary number of keys can be depressed without causing phantom key problems. The key codes returned by the interface are in the form:

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

drrr@2 nnnn@2

where "d" indicates direction of keystroke
(down=1, up=0), and "rrr" and "nnn" are given in
Figure 2-15.

Figure 2-15. Lisa Keyboard Codes

last edited by Pilkington

2-21a

31 May 1983 @9 am

Knuckles Fig 2-15 DP.
 p.2-30
 82-NDV-18-18

Keycodes

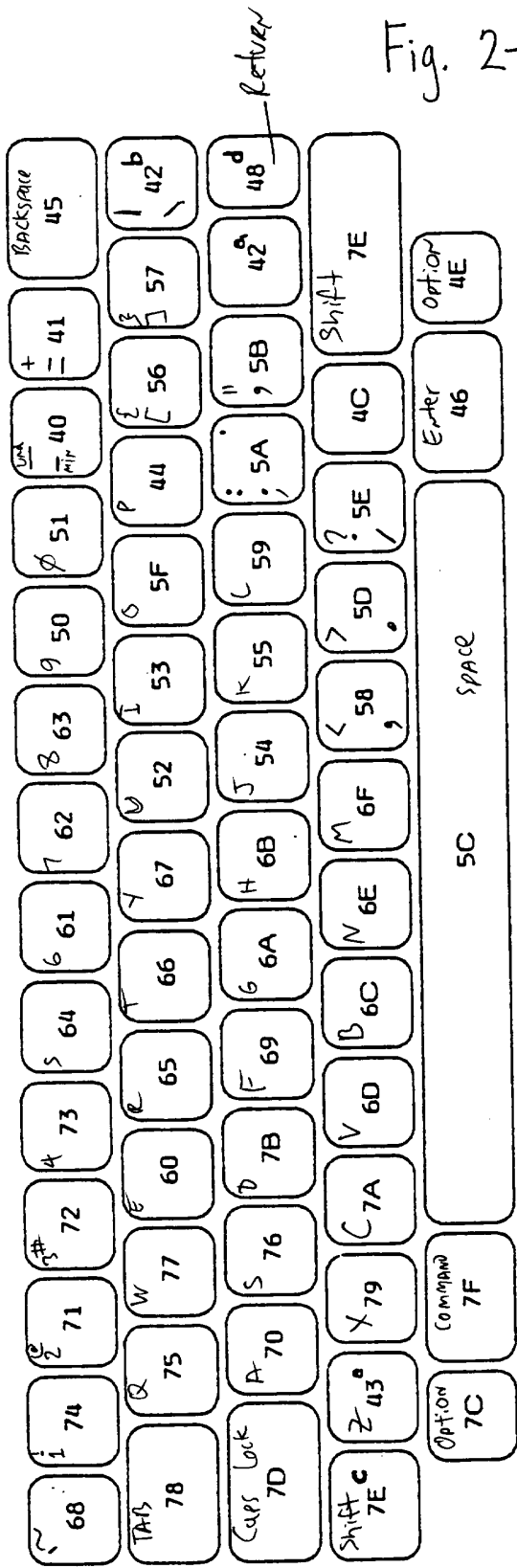
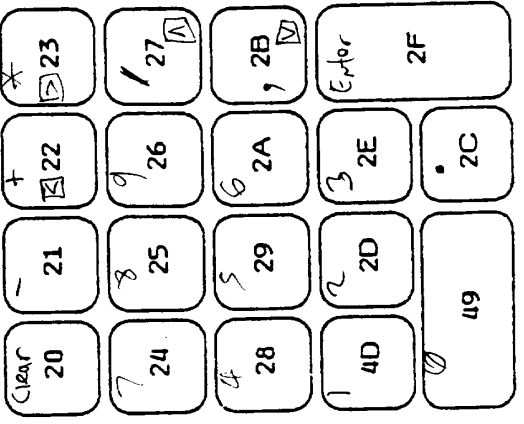
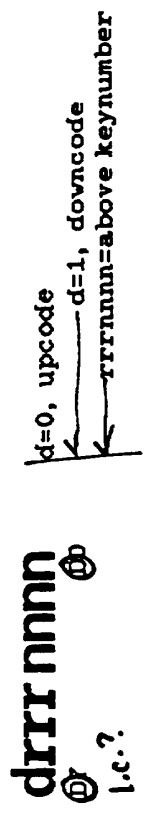


Fig. 2-15 : Keyboard Codes



All keycodes are in hexadecimal, with the following format in binary:



- Notes:
- a. Not on US layout
 - b. Not on European layout
 - c. Key 7E is shaped to fill the hole of the unused keys 43 on US layout.
 - d. Key 48 is shaped to fill the hole of the unused key 42.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Software must interpret such functions as shift and auto-repeat. Any key can be programmed to generate a non-maskable interrupt.

In addition to key information, a number of two-byte sequences that are known as reset codes are produced. Each sequence consists of a reset character, $80@16$, followed by a code number. The significance of the code numbers is shown in Figure 2-16.

| Reset Code (hexadecimal) | Significance |
|-----------------------------|--|
| FF | Keyboard COPS failure detected |
| FE | I/O Board COPS failure detected |
| FD | Keyboard unplugged. The reset code of the keyboard identification follows when the keyboard is plugged back in. |
| FC | Clock timer interrupt |
| FB | "Soft power off" switch has been depressed |
| FA) | Reserved for future use |
| .) | |
| .) | |
| .) | |
| F0) | |
| Ey | Clock data follows. Five bytes are transferred after this. "y" is the year, coded in the reset byte. The other bytes have the format: (80 Ey) dd dh hm ms st where ddd is the day, hh the hour, mm the minute, ss the second and t the tenths of a second. |
| DF) | Keyboard ID number. This code is produced whenever the keyboard COPS is reset. At present, the valid codes are: |
| .) | |
| .) | |
| .) | |
| 00) | |

Single nibble allows a 16 year span:
0 to 15
\$0 to \$F

Figure 2-16. Keyboard COPS Reset Codes

Mouse

The mouse connects to the COPS. Mouse commands have the format:

0111@2 ennn@2

If "e" is set, mouse interrupts are enabled. The "n" bits define the time interval that separate, mouse interrupts. The time interval is the binary value of "nnn" times 4 milliseconds. Whenever you move the mouse, it interrupts the processor with this period.

Mouse data are transferred to the CPU in three bytes. These are polled from the keyboard 6522 A port. The significance of the bytes is as follows:

| | |
|----|-------------------------------------|
| 00 | Mouse data follows |
| dx | Change in x direction (-127 to 127) |
| dy | Change in y direction (-127 to 127) |

Each time the value is accepted by the CPU, the bytes are reset. Should the CPU not respond immediately, the data are updated to show a cumulative value. The mouse button is returned as keycode d000@2 0110@2. The "d" bit defines whether the button is pressed (1) or not (0).

If the mouse is plugged in, a code of 1000@2 0111@2 is returned. If the mouse is unplugged, the code is 0000@2 0111@2.

Real-Time Clock

The real-time clock (RTC) is capable of resolution to 1/10th of a second and need be reset only every 16 years. An alarm can be programmed via the RTC to generate an interrupt and/or turn the Lisa on after a timeout of up to FFFFF@16 seconds, or about 12 days.

The clock commands are coded as shown in Figure 2-14. The "p" bit in Figure 2-14 is used to power the Lisa on or off under software control. A "0" turns power off. The "s" bit enables and disables Clock Set Mode.

In Clock Set Mode, only as many nibbles as are required need be sent. Once the "s" bit is

cleared, the peripheral assumes that the data was complete. The clock and timer must be stopped while the clock is being set. The clock can be left running while setting up the timer.

Time information is entered as a series of nibbles in the form:

```
aaaaa y ddd hh mm ss t
      -
```

The "a" nibbles are the timer delay value in seconds (0-FFFF@16), "y" is the year (0-15), "ddd" is the day (1-366), "hh" is the hour (0-23), "mm" is the minute (00-59), "ss" is the second (0-59) and "t" is the 1/10th of a second value (0-9).

All nibbles are maintained in binary coded decimal (BCD) format, except for the timer and year nibbles, which are binary. When reading the clock, the data are returned as a series of reset codes in the form:

```
80 Ey dd dh hm ms st
```

Software On-Off

Software controls the on and off states in the Lisa. When the power switch on the lower-front cabinet is pressed during operation, a reset code is presented to the CPU. This allows software to finish operations in progress and store work files before turning off the Lisa. Note that pressing the on-off switch does not remove power from the Lisa; power can only be removed by unplugging the line cord.

2.5.5 Processor Board Control

The processor board has a number of control bits that are set and reset by access to a particular address in I/O space. A summary of these is shown in Figure 2-17.

| Address (hexadecimal) | Function |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 00E000 | Memory Diagnostic DIAG1 Reset |
| 00E002 | " " " Set |
| 00E004 | Memory Diagnostic DIAG2 Reset |
| 00E006 | " " " Set |
| 00E008 | Context Selection SEG1 Reset |
| 00E00A | " " " Set |
| 00E00C | Context Selection SEG2 Reset |
| 00E00E | " " " Set |
| 00E010 | SETUP Register Reset |
| 00E012 | " " " Set |
| 00E014 | Enable Soft Memory Error Detect Reset |
| 00E016 | " " " " " Set |
| 00E018 | Enable Vertical Retrace Intrpt Reset |
| 00E01A | " " " " " Set |
| 00E01C | Enable Hard Memory Error Detect Reset |
| 00E01E | " " " " " Set |
| 00E800 | Video Address Latch |
| 00F000 | Memory Error Address Latch |
| 00F800 | Status Register |

Figure 2-17. Processor Board Control Addressing

Context selection is discussed in subsection 2.3.4. Memory errors are discussed in section 2.7. The status register is discussed in Section 2.8.

The video address latch is used to point to the physical address of the 32 Kbyte video page in main memory. The memory error address latch saves the accessed address when a memory error occurs. This may then be interrogated by software for statistical analysis of memory errors.

2.6 Interrupt Handling

Upon detection of an interrupt, the CPU enters supervisor mode automatically. It then uses a table in memory, known as the Exception Vector Table, to point to the location at which the routine to handle the interrupt can be found. The priority level of the source of the interrupt can be used as an index into the table, or the interrupt level itself can be used directly as the exception vector.

The fixed priority interrupts are:

| Level | Type |
|-------|--|
| 7 | Non-maskable interrupt (highest) |
| 6 | Serial I/O ports |
| 5 | Expansion slot #1 |
| 4 | Expansion slot #2 |
| 3 | Expansion slot #3 |
| 2 | Keyboard/Mouse/Real-Time Clock/on-off switch |
| 1 | All others (lowest) |

Figure 2-18 shows the Exception Vector Table assignment for the Lisa. All addresses are logical addresses. This means that their physical location is a function of the MMU setup.

| Exception | Vector Address (hexadecimal) |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Reset: Initial SSP | 000000 |
| Reset: Initial PC | 000004 |
| Bus Error | 000008 |
| Address Error | 00000C |
| Illegal Instruction | 000010 |
| Zero Divide | 000014 |
| CHK Instruction | 000018 |
| TRAP Instruction | 00001C |
| Privilege Violation | 000020 |
| Trace | 000024 |
| Unimplemented Instruction 1010 | 000028 |
| Unimplemented Instruction 1111 | 00002C |
| Reserved, unassigned | 000030 - 00005F |
| Spurious Interrupt | 000060 |
| Other Internal Interrupt | 000064 |
| Keyboard Interrupt | 000068 |
| Slot 2 Autovector | 00006C |
| Slot 1 Autovector | 000070 |
| Slot 0 Autovector | 000074 |
| RS232 Interrupt | 000078 |
| Non-Maskable Interrupt | 00007C |
| TRAP Instruction Vectors | 000080 - 0000BF |
| Reserved, unassigned | 0000C0 - 0000FF |
| User Interrupt Vectors | 000100 - 0003FF |

Figure 2-18. Exception Vector Table

A non-maskable interrupt can come from one of four sources:

- * Power failure
- * Hard memory error
- * Soft memory error
- * Keyboard reset.

Level-1 interrupts can be generated by one of three sources:

- * Hard disk interface, the parallel port,
- * Floppy-disk controller
- * Video circuit controller.

The power reset vector is not shown here because it is located in ROM, which is not accessed except in special I/O space during powerup processing.

2.7 Error Processing

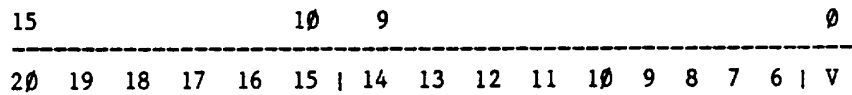
The Lisa operates with a flexible system of handshaking on the bus. When a device is addressed, the CPU will wait 30-300 microseconds for some response from the addressed device before timing out. Upon timeout, a bus error is produced.

The Lisa can experience two kinds of memory errors: hard or soft. A hard memory error is the result of a parity error during memory access on a parity memory board or an uncorrectable error on an Error Correction Code (ECC) memory board.

A soft memory error is the result of detection of a correctable error on an ECC memory board. In either case, the appropriate status bit is set, see section 2.8, and a non-maskable interrupt is generated to the CPU. A latch contains the address at which the error was detected. The MMU can be used to map out bad pages in memory, should this become necessary.

The address of the word that caused the error can be read from the Memory Error Address Latch at 00F000@16 in I/O space. Detection of either a hard or a soft memory error can be disabled, as described in Figure 2-17.

Memory error address latch



bit 0 - 0 error on CPU access D1<-D15 contain A6-A20 of failing address

1 - error on Video access D10-D15 contain A15-A20 of failing address D1-D9 invalid

2.8 Status Register

The status register is located at 00F800@16 in I/O space and is a read-only 16-bit register. A bus error exception routine can use the status register to determine the cause of bus errors. A breakdown of the significance of the bits in the status register is shown in Figure 2-19.

| Bit | Name | Significance |
|------|------------------|---|
| 0 | Soft Error | A soft memory error has occurred. |
| 1 | Hard Error | A hard memory error has occurred. |
| 2 | Vertical Retrace | The video circuit has begun a vertical retrace and an interrupt has been generated. The video circuit continues to set this bit for 90 microseconds after the start of the retrace. Enable Vertical Retrace Interrupt can be reset to inhibit this bit. |
| 3 | Bus Timeout | A timer attached to Address Strobe (AS/) waits for 30-300 microseconds before generating a Bus Error condition. |
| 4 | Video Bit | Available to the CPU for diagnostic purposes, this bit corresponds to the output of the video circuit. |
| 5 | Horiz. Sync | Reflects the state of the horizontal sync signal. It is available to the CPU for diagnostic purposes. |
| 6 | Video Mode | Reserved for future use. |
| 7-15 | | Not used. |

Figure 2-19. Status Register

CHAPTER 3. INTERNAL SPECIFICATIONS

This chapter describes specifications for the Lisa and the manner in which it interfaces with the outside world.

3.1 Packaging

The configuration of hardware modules within the cabinet was discussed briefly in Chapter 1. The following parts are removeable for inspection or replacement:

- * Front panel
- * Floppy-disk drives
- * Back panel
- * Power supply
- * Motherboard
- * CPU board
- * I/O board
- * Memory boards
- * Keyboard
- * Mouse
- * Expansion boards.

Disassembly procedures for user-servicable parts are described in the Lisa Owner's Guide. Access to other subassemblies is described in Chapter 11.

The top front of the cabinet is taken up by the CRT and the two floppy-disk drives. You can access these devices by removing the front panel of the cabinet. The drives are held in place by a finger-nut below the lower drive, and both drives can be slid out once this is undone. Care must be taken not to snag or overextend the drive cables before they are disconnected from the drives.

Removing the back panel from the cabinet gives you access to the power supply and the motherboard assembly. The motherboard carries all the logic boards and conceptually consists of two parts.

The first part carries the main logic boards, including the processor board, the I/O board, and either one or

two memory boards, parallel to the back of the cabinet. Not all the boards are immediately visible when the back panel is removed, because they are arranged one behind the other.

The second part carries the boards at right angles to the back of the cabinet, and is known as the expansion bus section. This is where additional boards, such as interface or controller boards, are inserted. The entire motherboard slides out from the cabinet by gently pulling to the rear, which disengages the two edge connectors through which the motherboard connects into the cabinet.

However, it is not necessary to remove the entire card cage to remove one of the boards from the expansion slots. These are held in place by special card-edge connectors that allow the boards to slide out towards the back of the cabinet.

The power supply is the rectangular enclosure occupying the right side of the cabinet; it can be removed separately. To do this, unfasten the finger-nut beneath the cabinet. Then, slide the entire power supply backwards out of the cabinet.

Electrical connections between modules and the rest of the Lisa are made by means of tongue and socket connectors. These connections are made automatically when the boards are inserted and pushed home.

Only the disk drives require that their connecting cable be carefully disconnected before the drive can be fully removed from the cabinet. Figure 3-1 shows an exploded view of modules inside the cabinet.

Figure 3-1. Modules in Cabinet

No module should be removed from the cabinet while the Lisa is turned on. Interlock switches on both the front and back panels turn the Lisa off when either panel is removed. However, the line plug should be unplugged before the Lisa is serviced.

The three expansion slots to the right-back of the cabinet are designed to accept add-on logic boards. These can be used to expand the Lisa by adding such features as a custom interface to another computer or a specialized controller to a peripheral that does not readily interface with either of the ports available. Such expansion boards must be compatible with the specification for the expansion bus, given in section 3.4.

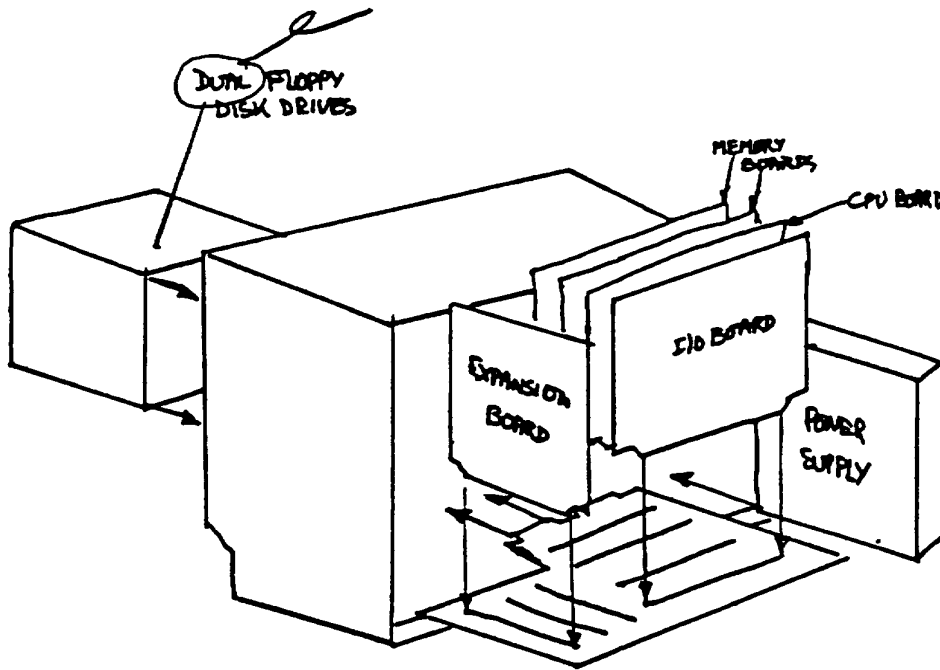
Expansion boards are easily removed from the Lisa with the end-opening connectors used to house them. Turn the lever for any slot clockwise one quarter turn, and slide the board out of the connector.

3.2 Specifications

This section specifies environmental, electrical and performance parameters in the Lisa. Interfaces to the Lisa are defined in later sections of this chapter.

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual



Note: All components except the disk drives have plug-in connections.

Figure 3-1. System Component Exploded View
Modules in cabinet

3-3b

3.2.1 Environmental

The Lisa is designed to operate in an office environment. The purpose of this section is to define environmental limits for the Lisa which, if exceeded, might result in a malfunction.

Note that the data apply only to the Lisa, which includes the mouse and keyboard. Additional equipment, such as an external hard disk or printer are specified separately in the relevant documentation.

- * Operating Temperature: 0 to 35 Degrees C
- * Operating Humidity: 10% to 80%
(non-condensing)
- * Storage Temperature: -20 to 70 Degrees C
- * Storage Humidity: 0% to 90%
(non-condensing).

3.2.2 Physical

Following dimensions apply to the Lisa only.

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Main Assembly Dimensions: | 13.9" (354 mm) High |
| | 18.6" (474 mm) Wide |
| | 15.6" (396 mm) Deep |
| Keyboard dimensions: | 3.1" (79 mm) High |
| | 18.8" (479 mm) Wide |
| | 6.5" (166 mm) Deep |
| Mouse operating space: | 2.1" by 6.3" (55 mm by 160 mm) |
| Keyboard cable extension: | 4ft. (1.2 m) maximum |
| Main assembly weight: | 44.8lbs (20.4 Kg) |
| Keyboard weight: | 4.13lbs (1.88 Kg) |
| Power cord length: | 7.5ft. (2.26 m) |

The Lisa should be used with an acceptable operating space around it. Under no circumstances should the air flow through the cabinet vents, particularly those on the bottom, be restricted.

The mouse operating space should be approximately 6 inches from either side of the keyboard. When you move the mouse around a 6 inch area on any flat surface, you can reach any point on the CRT with the cursor.

3.2.3 Electrical

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| AC power requirements | 150 VA @ 115 VAC (single phase) |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Acceptable input voltages | 90 to 130 VAC |
| Input AC frequency | 60 +/- 2 Hz |
| Maximum power dissipation | 150 watts @ 70 deg.F |
| Voltages available on bus | +5 V, -5 V, +12 V, -12 V, +5 VSTBY DC |

The currents available on these voltages (V) is a function of the Lisa configuration. Refer to subsection 3.3.2 for the total power capacity of the power supply.

3.3 Modules

Each module can be easily dismantled from the cabinet for test or replacement. In addition, the keyboard and mouse detach for easy inspection or replacement. The Lisa consists of the following assemblies:

- * Cabinet
- * CRT
- * Power supply
- * Motherboard
- * Two floppy-disk drives
- * Video board
- * Processor board
- * I/O board
- * 2 memory boards (maximum)
- * Keyboard
- * Mouse
- * Switch/Disk cable
- * Power supply harness.

Refer to Chapter 11 for details on the assemblies.

3.3.1 Cabinet

The cabinet consists of the sheet-metal frame and the plastic cladding parts. In addition, the following modules are not easily accessed and can be considered as a part of this assembly.

- * CRT assembly
- * On-off switch board
- * Disk-cable harness
- * Power-supply harness.

The general view of the cabinet assembly is shown in Figure 3-2.

Figure 3-2. Cabinet Assembly

3.3.2 Power Supply

The power supply is a self-contained unit, located in the right back of the cabinet. The supply weighs approximately 3.5 pounds and provides the following voltages:

| | | |
|---------|---|--------------|
| +5 V | @ | 8.0 Amps (A) |
| -5 V | @ | 0.2 A |
| +12 V | @ | 2.0 A |
| -12 V | @ | 0.2 A |
| +33 V | @ | 0.6 A |
| +5 STBY | @ | 0.1 A |

3.3.3 Floppy-Disk Drives

The floppy-disk subassembly consists of two floppy-disk drives in a sheet-metal carrier. The carrier is installed by sliding it into the upper-right front of the cabinet. Before the drives are inserted, the disk cable must be connected to the back of both disk drives in the assembly. The longer cable goes to the upper drive.

The assembly is held in place by a finger screw. It can be accessed by removing the front panel of the

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

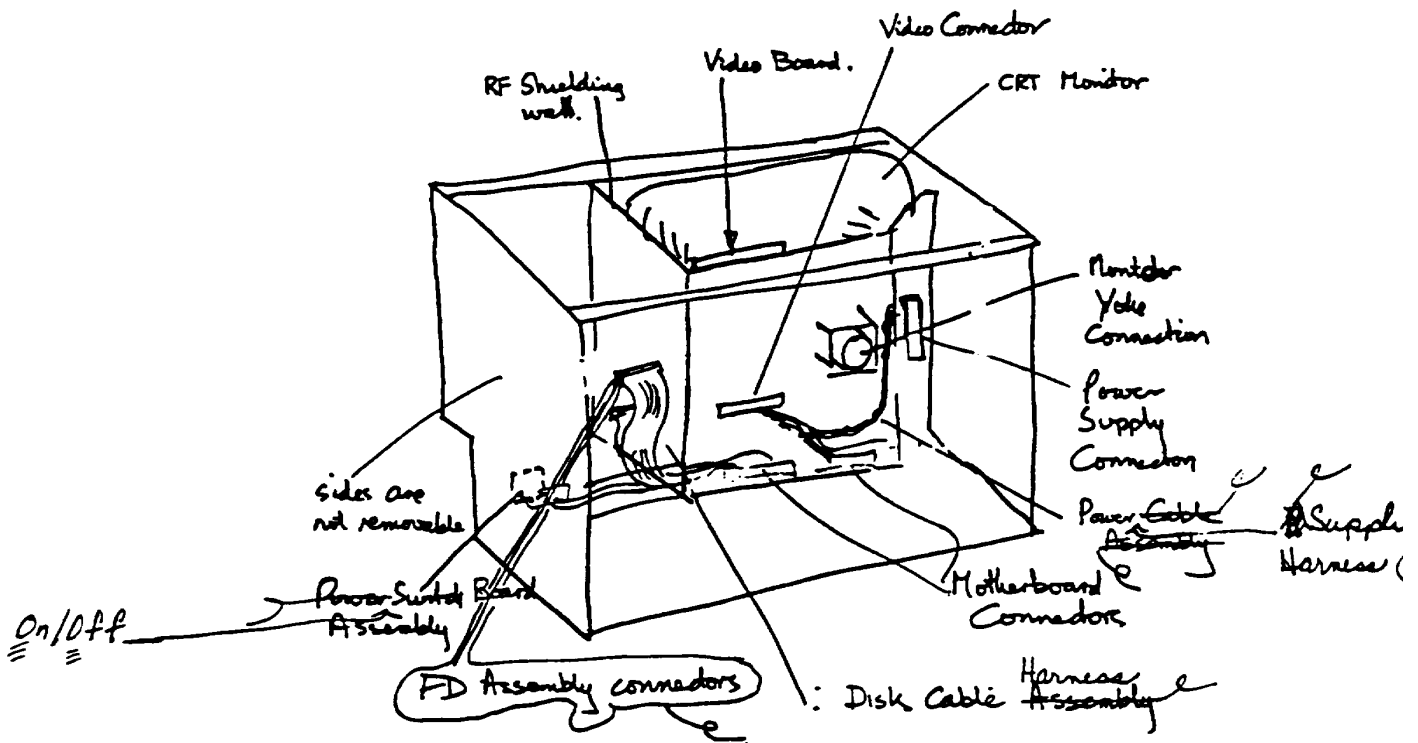


Figure 3-2. Cabinet Main Chassis Assembly

3-6b

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

cabinet.

3.3.4 Printed Circuit Boards

The circuit boards are keyed such that it is not possible to insert a board into the wrong slot. For this reason, care should be taken not to force a board into a slot. The extraction handles of all logic boards in the Lisa are color-coded to illustrate the correct slot and orientation.

3.3.5 Keyboard and Mouse Assemblies

The keyboard stands alone and connects to the switch assembly in the lower-right corner of the cabinet. It receives its power input from, and transmits key data over, this cable. The keyboard assembly consists of a single printed circuit board (PCB) that carries all keys and logic components sandwiched between the two halves of the plastic housing.

The mouse stands alone and connects to the special 9-pin DB connector at the center-back of the motherboard.

3.4 The Expansion Bus

A subset of the internal system bus is made available on three slots in the motherboard. These are accessible from when the back panel is removed from the cabinet. They are equipped with end-opening connectors, which allow expansion PCBs to be inserted or removed without removing the motherboard from the cabinet. However, the AC line cable should be disconnected whenever an expansion board is being removed or inserted.

The purpose of this section is to provide a specification of the expansion bus and its physical configuration to permit an interface to be designed that will plug into the expansion bus.

Software to handle such a component must also be generated. The generation of such software lies beyond the scope of this manual. Refer to Chapter 2 and to the documents listed in the Preface for assistance.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

3.4.1 Bus Signal List

The expansion bus is an extension of the system bus. It provides sufficient data, address and control lines to enable peripherals, in addition to those implemented on the processor and I/O boards, to operate within the Lisa environment.

Many signal names are recognized as corresponding to those available on the 68000 processor chip. In all such cases, these are simply buffered versions of the 68000 signal, with the function being identical to the original. Refer to the 68000 User's Manual for details of individual signals.

Other signals, such as the slot high and low decode signals, are generated or received by the processor board logic. A diagram of the signal layout on the connector is shown in Figure 3-3.

Front of the Lisa

| | | | | | | |
|----------------|--|----|--|----|--|------------------|
| +5 V | | 56 | | 55 | | +5 V |
| Digital Ground | | 54 | | 53 | | Digital Ground |
| +5 Stdby | | 52 | | 51 | | SPKRIN |
| UDS/ | | 50 | | 49 | | LDS/ |
| READ | | 48 | | 47 | | AS/ |
| DTACK/ | | 46 | | 45 | | +12 V |
| VPA/ | | 44 | | 43 | | VMA/ |
| BA12 | | 42 | | 41 | | BA11 |
| BA10 | | 40 | | 39 | | BA9 |
| BA8 | | 38 | | 37 | | BA7 |
| BA6 | | 36 | | 35 | | BA5 |
| BA4 | | 34 | | 33 | | BA3 |
| BA2 | | 32 | | 31 | | BA1 |
| BD0 | | 30 | | 29 | | BD1 |
| BD2 | | 28 | | 27 | | BD3 |
| BD4 | | 26 | | 25 | | BD5 |
| BD6 | | 24 | | 23 | | BD7 |
| BD8 | | 22 | | 21 | | BD9 |
| BD10 | | 20 | | 19 | | BD11 |
| BD12 | | 18 | | 17 | | BD13 |
| BD14 | | 16 | | 15 | | BD15 |
| BGOn-1/ | | 14 | | 13 | | BGOn/ (n=slot #) |
| BR | | 12 | | 11 | | E |
| BGACK/ | | 10 | | 09 | | LDMA/ |
| CPUCK | | 08 | | 07 | | RESET |
| IAKn/ | | 06 | | 05 | | INTn/ |
| SHn/ | | 04 | | 03 | | SLn/ |
| -12 V | | 02 | | 01 | | -5 V |

Back of the Lisa

Figure 3-3. Signal Pin Layout

3.4.2 Bus Signal Descriptions

BD0-BD15 16 buffered data lines that comprise the data bus.

BA1-BA12 12 buffered address lines that select one of 4096 words. Since the lines are derived from the low-order 12 lines from the MMU, a process which is assigned a segment enclosing the 16384 bytes on an expansion card can address the I/O card from 0-3FFF@16.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

- AS/ A signal that is the address strobe, which indicates that the CPU has initiated a memory cycle. Due to the MMU delay on the processor board, only bits BA1 to BA8 are definitely stable at this time; the high-order 4 bits may still be changing.
- UDS/ Upper Data Strobe indicates that, during a write operation, the upper byte on the bus (BD8-BD15) is valid in the current bus cycle.
- LDS/ Lower Data Strobe indicates that, during a write operation, the lower byte on the bus (BD0-BD7) is valid in the current bus cycle.
- DTACK/ Data Transfer Acknowledge indicates to the CPU that the expansion device has performed whatever data transfer had been requested by the CPU and that the current cycle can be completed.
- READ This signal indicates the direction of data transfer to be performed on the buffered data lines. The signal being asserted indicates that the CPU expects the I/O device to present data on the bus.
- VPA/ Valid Peripheral Address indicates to the CPU that the device currently being addressed operates with a 68000-compatible bus cycle. VPA/ must never be asserted concurrent with DTACK/.
- VMA/ Valid Memory Address signals the peripheral that the CPU has recognized the VPA signal and is now executing a 68000 cycle.
- E Equivalent of the 68000 phi2 clock. It is high for 4 clock cycles and low for 6, giving E a frequency of 500 kilohertz (KHz) in the Lisa.
- BR/ Bus Request tells the processor that a peripheral device is requesting control of the bus.
- BGO_n/ A Bus Grant-input is issued by the CPU once a direct memory access (DMA) device has been given control of the bus. If the

expansion card had requested the bus, this signal allows the card to assume control of the bus. Otherwise, the BGO_n-1 pin is used to daisy chain grants to the near slot. Note that the 68000 bus master protocol is used.

- BGO_n-1/ A Bus Grant-output that reflects the condition of BGO_n if the peripheral does not wish to use the bus. The connections from BGO_n to BGO_n-1 must not be altered during a DMA cycle.
- BGACK/ Bus Grant Acknowledge; driven by the expansion card when it assumes control of the bus and is deasserted only when it wishes to relinquish control.
- LDMA/ Load DMA; used to load the high address of the DMA latch. Due to the number of bus lines available, the high 8 address bits are latched on the CPU board from the contents of the 8 data bits BD5-BD12. The expansion device must control both the signal and the contents of the latch, which must be loaded at the beginning of any DMA transfer.
- CPUCK A buffered 5 MHz CPU clock, which is available for general timing use.
- RESET/ Signal asserted by the CPU board, which makes all peripheral devices return to their power-on state. If the Lisa is off and RESET is pulled to +5Stdby with a 100 ohm resistor, the Lisa turns on.
- +5Stdby A +5.7 V source that is available whenever the Lisa is attached to an AC supply. Note that while this supply is available when the Lisa is off, it is not battery backed-up and therefore is not present when the Lisa is unplugged. No more than 40 milliamps (mA) should be drawn from this supply.
- INT_n/ Signal used by the expansion device to interrupt the CPU. It should be held asserted until the interrupt is acknowledged from the CPU.
- IACK_n/ Signal used to acknowledge an interrupt made by a peripheral device.

- SLn/ Signal used by the CPU to select the low-order contiguous 4096 words on the expansion device that are addressed by BA1-BA12.
- SHn/ Signal used by the CPU to select the high-order contiguous 4096 words on the expansion device that are addressed by BA1-BA12.

3.4.3 Bus Parameters

The expansion bus provides five DC voltages to devices that may be connected there. The total current that can be drawn on them for all devices connected to the bus is as follows:

| | |
|----------|----------------------------|
| +5 VDC | 2.0 A |
| -5 VDC | 0.075 A |
| +12 VDC | 0.83 A |
| -12 VDC | 0.1 A |
| +5 VSTBY | 0.040 A (always available) |

The +5 VSTBY voltage is at a level of 5.7 V whenever AC power is applied to the Lisa. The mechanical layout of an expansion board must conform to Apple Specification #062-0143.

All signals on the expansion bus are Transistor-Transistor Logic (TTL). Drivers to the bus are of the following types:

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| BA1-BA8 | LS244 |
| BA9-BA12 | LS374/LS373 |
| BD0-BD15 | LS245 |
| SHn,SLn | LS138 |
| BGOn, | Depends on next board |
| UDS,LDS,AS,READ,VMA,E | LS244 |
| BGACK | F02 |
| RESET | 7417 (wired OR) |
| IAn | LS156 |

All signals with an "n" are unique to the slot being used and need not be buffered. All other signals should be buffered on the expansion board to minimize loading on the bus itself.

Signals not mentioned above are input to the bus from the expansion board. A bus driver device should drive these.

3.4.4 Bus Timing

Timing on the expansion bus closely follows that of the 68000 CPU device. Refer to the 68000 User's Manual for details.

Expansion bus timing is controlled by the slot decode signals from the processor board and by the acknowledge signal from the controller on the expansion bus. Since the expansion bus is merely an extension of the system bus, signal timing is identical on both.

Normal data transfer on the bus begins with the address strobe signal being asserted. At this time, the bus address lines are not valid because of time delays in the MMU. The slot decode signal to asserted during the S5 state of the processor cycle after the address and data strobe lines are stable.

The signal sequence for a read operation from the expansion bus by the CPU is shown in Figure 3-4. The CPU waits for the DTACK/ signal from the addressed expansion peripheral before completing the cycling by reading the data from the data bus. Should the peripheral not respond, the CPU times out after approximately 30 milliseconds with a bus error condition. This is shown in the first cycle of Figure 3-4.

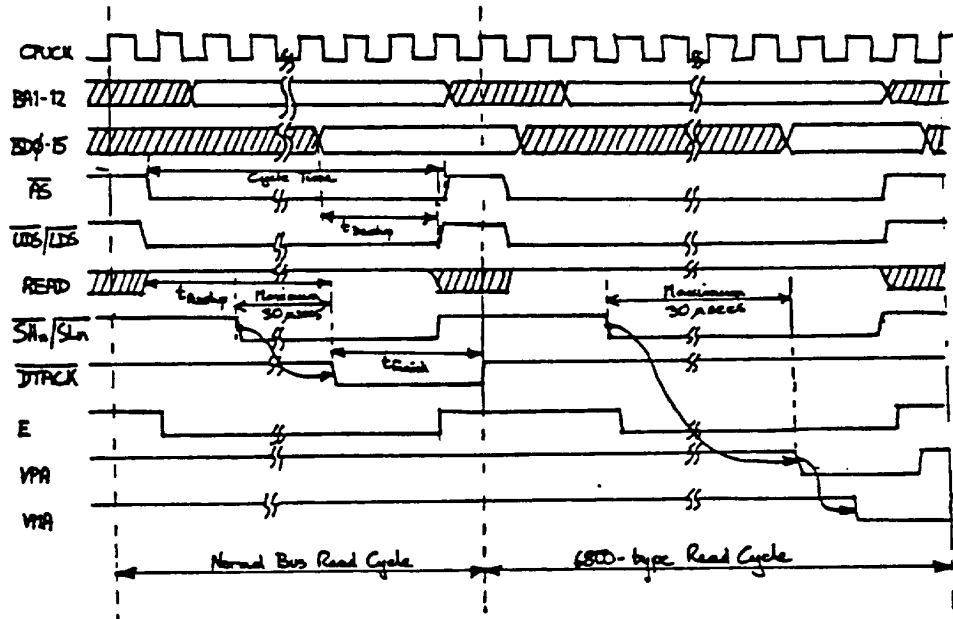
| | Min | ! | Max |
|------------|-------|---|-------|
| Cycle time | 800ns | ! | 300us |
| TAssetup | 100ns | ! | -- |
| TDsetup | 100ns | ! | -- |
| Tfinish | 100ns | ! | 260ns |

Figure 3-4. Expansion Bus Read-Timing Diagram

Data transfer from a 6800-type peripheral is performed with the assistance of the VMA and VPA handshake signals, plus the E clock signal. These signals are described in the signal list above and in the 68000 User's Manual. The transfer cycle is similar to a normal data transfer with the VPA and VMA signals operating as handshake signals instead of SLn and DTACK.

Data are written to a peripheral in a similar manner. The slot decode being asserted indicates that valid data are being presented to the bus by the CPU. The DTACK signal acknowledges receipt of the data. This is shown in Figure 3-5, along with a 6800-type write cycle.

Expansion peripherals normally use the slot decode to drive the acknowledge signal. Any peripheral using DMA must follow the timing described in the 68000 User's Manual.



| | Min | ! </th <th>Max</th> | Max |
|----------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|
| Cycle time | 800ns | ! | 300us |
| TAs _{setup} | 100ns | ! | -- |
| TD _{setup} | 100ns | ! | -- |
| T _{finish} | 100ns | ! | 260ns |

P.P.

Figure 3-4. Expansion Bus Read Timing Diagram

Figure 3-5. Expansion Bus Write Timing Diagram

3.4.5 DMA Scheme

The DMA scheme used in the Lisa corresponds closely with that used in the 68000 CPU. The BG lines are daisy chained on the motherboard. The priority assigned to an expansion device is therefore a function of the interface design and the choice of physical location of the card in the expansion slots.

The hardware priority for DMA devices is:

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| Highest | I/O Board |
| | Slot 3 |
| | Slot 2 |
| Lowest | Slot 1 |

In order that the priority chain is not interrupted, any card that does not use DMA must hard wire its BGO_n signal to BGO_{n-1} signal.

Since this propagation will not occur if no card is present, it is essential that the slots using DMA are filled beginning with slot 3.

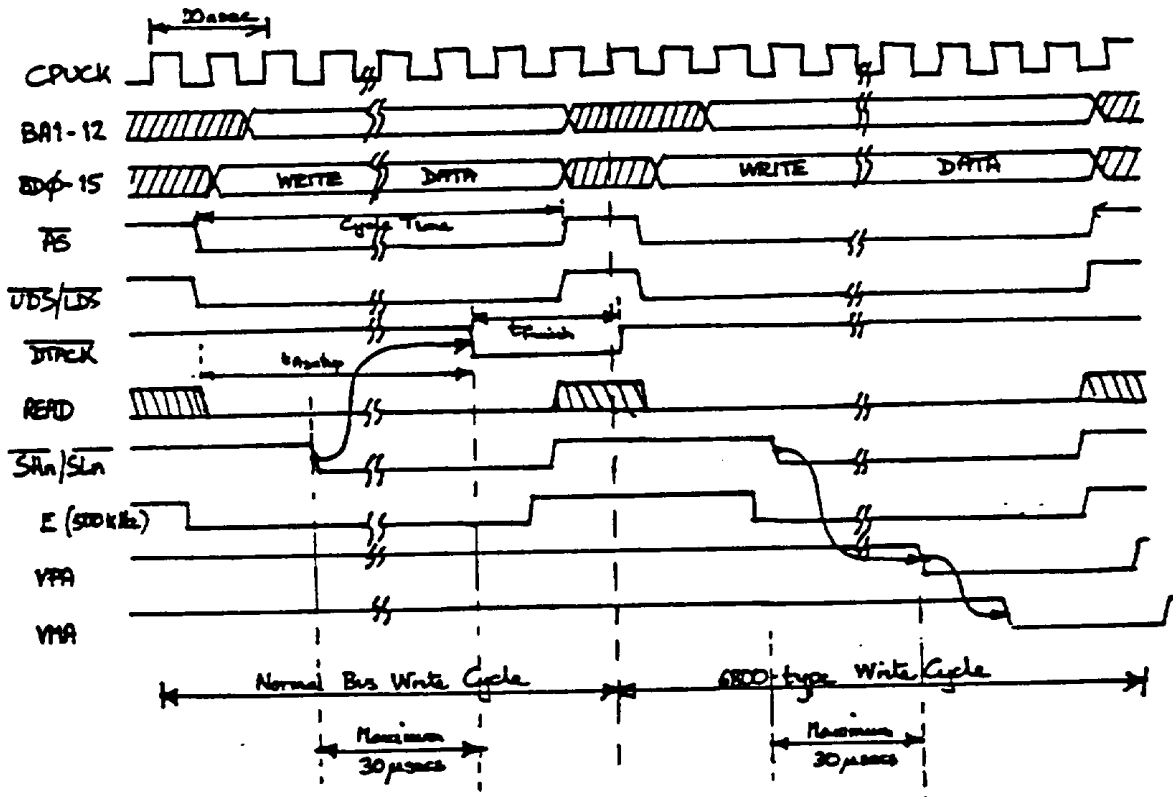


Figure 3-5 Expansion Bus Write Timing Diagram

Handwritten initials

3-15b

DMA transfers should be limited to 1 millisecond in order not to interfere with the processor's ability to proceed with normal program execution.

In addition to those lines mentioned in subsection 3.4.2, an expansion device that uses DMA must also be capable of driving the following signals:

- * All 16 data lines
- * All 12 address lines
- * AS/ , UDS/ , LDS/ , and READ.

Timing of these signals should follow those generated by the 68000 as given in the 68000 User's Manual and in Figures 3-4 and 3-5. Note that DMA accesses use physical address.

The high-order 8 bits of the DMA address are held in a latch located on the processor board. This latch must be loaded by asserting the desired byte on BD5-BD12 and asserting LDMA/ before any transfer is attempted.

3.4.6 Bootstrap Protocol

If an expansion device is to be used to boot the operating system at power-on time, it must be self-identifying and an identification protocol must be followed.

Each device must contain ROM storage, the contents of which must be programmed to include the information shown in Figure 3-6. The byte-wide ROM contains word data stored with the low byte following the high byte.

Note: Expansion card ROM is on the lower half of data bus.

Therefore, ignore MSB of each read 16-bit word.

| | |
|------------|------------|
| <u>MSB</u> | <u>LSB</u> |
| X | good |

| Address | Contents |
|---------|---|
| 1 | ! Type Code ! |
| 5 | ! Word Count ! |
| 9 | !Status routine entry ! |
| 13 | ! Boot routine entry ! |
| 17 | ! Icon Pointer ! |
| 21 | ! ! Program data ! ! and ! . icon bitmaps . . . ! ! |
| nn | ! Checksum ! |

Note: Addresses as accessed by the Lisa.

Figure 3-6. Bootstrap ROM Format

The first word of the ROM defines a type code. This code is a 16-bit number with the most significant byte in location 1 and the least significant byte in location 3. It has the following form:

bsit@2 nnnn@2 nnnn@2 nnnn@2

- where b = 1 if device is bootable
- s = 1 if device has status program
- i = 1 if device has an icon(s) to be displayed
- t = 1 if device is a test card
- n = device (or board) identification number

If the expansion device is selected for booting, the boot ROM first checks that the card is bootable by checking the "b" bit. If this bit is not set to a 1, the boot is aborted and the boot ROM displays an error to the user.

If the status bit is on, the boot ROM first executes the status program by using the status routine entry

pointer. In addition, when the expansion device is selected, the status routine is executed again. The boot ROM preloads Register A1 with the address of the expansion slot's low select (SLn) to enable the status and boot programs to access the device by addressing relative to A1. The status program must always return to the boot ROM with the result in register D0 via a return to subroutine (RTS) instruction. A status of 0 indicates that all is well, while a nonzero status aborts the boot and the boot ROM displays an error to the user.

The icon pointer provides a method for expansion devices to display to the user a boot option in a pictorial manner. If the icon bit is set to 1, the boot ROM scans the expansion device ROM using the icon pointer and expects the following format:

Icon Pointer (one word) - points to:

Icon count (one byte up to two icons)
 Pointer to first icon (word)
 Pointer to second icon (word)
 First icon (bitmap)
 Second icon (bitmap)

The icon pointer must be a one-word value containing the byte offset from the base ROM address to the byte containing the icon count. The pointers to the actual icon(s) must also be in this format. The icons themselves can be stored in a compressed manner, and, if so, the icon count byte must have its most significant bit (MSB) = 1 with the remainder of the byte being the actual count. The compressed format must be the same as that used by the boot ROM; a special program is currently available to do the compression. If not compressed, the icon(s) must be standard 48 by 32-bit Lisa icons, and should be stored as 32 horizontal rows of 6 bytes each, 192 bytes total.

If the user requests the boot icon menu at power-up time, the boot ROM will display the standard boot icon options along with the expansion-device icons, if present. Up to two icons can be displayed per expansion device, and the boot ROM will assign them unique boot id's as follows:

| I/O Slot | Boot id's |
|----------|-----------|
| 1 | 3,4 |
| 2 | 6,7 |
| 3 | 9,A |

If an expansion-device icon is selected for booting, the boot id will be relayed to the loaded boot program in register D0.

The test card bit is primarily intended for internal use by Apple manufacturing. The Lisa boot ROM makes two special checks if an I/O slot card is installed with the test card bit set:

1. If no other cards are installed, the test card id is in the range 0@16 to 7F@16, and the boot bit is set, the Lisa defaults to booting from the test card.
2. If the test card id is in the range 0@16 to 7F@16 and an Applenet card is also installed, the Lisa defaults to booting from the Applenet card.

The final two parameters in the expansion device ROM are the word count and checksum. The word count should be a 16-bit number indicating the length in words of the ROM data starting from the status routine entry point up to, but not including, the checksum word. The boot program will be read into memory starting at address 02000002 as 16-bit words. As the words are loaded they will be added to a cumulative 16-bit sum, which is rotated to the left one bit position after each add. The 2-byte checksum should produce a 0 result when added to this calculated sum and all the rest of the data in the ROM, including the type code, routine entry points, icon pointer, word count and icon bitmaps.

3.5 The External Ports

The Lisa is equipped with several standard interfaces for additional devices, such as printers and hard disks, that can be attached. This section provides a convenient specification for these interfaces.

The external plugs and sockets available are:

- * 2 serial RS232-C ports
- * 1 25-pin DB parallel port

- * 1 9-pin DB mouse connector
- * 1 3-pin keyboard connector
- * 1 co-axial composite video jack.

3.5.1 Serial Port Interface

The two built-in RS232-C serial communication ports can support local asynchronous communication at rates up to 19.2 kilobaud (Kbaud). In addition, port number 1 conforms to RS232-C type-D specifications, which enables full modem control with either synchronous or asynchronous protocols.

The pin assignments and their use on both ports are shown in Figure 3-7. Both channels are set up to be the data terminal equipment (DTE) end of the communications system.

In order to connect other DTE equipment, a modem eliminator or "null modem" is required. An Apple null modem (590-0029-00) with a communication card cable can be used to connect a serial printer to the Lisa via a serial port. Both ports are standard 25-pin D-type female connectors.

| Signal Name | Description | Channel A | Channel B |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| TxD | Transmit Data | 2 | 2 |
| RxD | Receive Data | 3 | 3 |
| RTS | Request to Send | 4 | 4 |
| CTS | Clear to Send | 5 | n/a |
| DTR | Data Terminal Ready | 20 | 20 |
| DCD | Data Carrier Detect | 8 | n/a |
| TxC | Transmit Clock Input | 15 | n/a |
| RxC | Receive Clock Input | 17 | n/a |
| TEXT | Transmit Clock Output | 24 | n/a |
| DSR | Data Set Ready | n/a | 6 |
| RxD | Applebus Receive Data | n/a | 19 |

Note: n/c = not connected.

Figure 3-7. Serial Port Pin Assignments

3.5.2 Parallel Interface Port

This interface is normally used to connect a hard disk, such as the Apple Profile to the Lisa. It may

alternatively be used to connect a device that has a high data transfer rate and for which the serial ports are not appropriate.

The port is a general-purpose 8-bit interface that is presented on a 25-pin D-type connector. Pin 7 is blocked to prevent connection of an RS232-type cable. The pin assignments are shown in Figure 3-8.

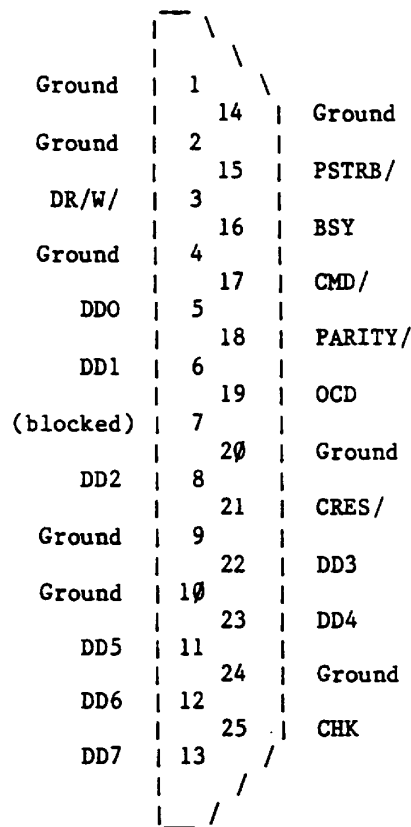


Figure 3-8. Parallel Port Pin Assignments

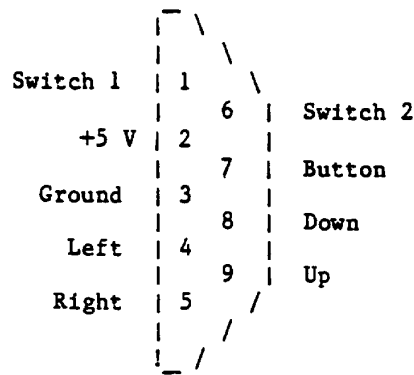
The meaning of the individual signals on the interface is as follows:

DD0-DD7 Eight bidirectional data lines. Bit DD7 is the MSB.

| | |
|--------|---|
| DR/W/ | A line driven high by the Lisa to indicate that data are expected to be input on the data lines. It is driven low to indicate that data are being output. |
| PARITY | Bidirectional line that must be configured on the basis of the data currently on the data lines to give odd parity. |
| PSTRB/ | Processor strobe line used as a signal by the Lisa to indicate valid data being output. |
| CMD/ | A line asserted by the Lisa to indicate that a command has been placed on the data lines. |
| BSY/ | A line asserted by the peripheral to indicate to the Lisa that it is busy and unable to process commands on the interface. |
| OCD | A line monitored by the Lisa. If it is high, it is assumed that no device is connected to the interface. |
| CRES/ | A line asserted by the Lisa when the peripheral is to be reset to its power-on state. |
| CHK | Signal that may be used to interrupt the CPU in the event that a fault condition has occurred in the device connected to the interface. |

3.5.3 The Mouse Interface

The mouse is connected to the Lisa by means of a 9-pin DB connector, located in the middle of the connector panel at the back. The connector pin assignment is shown in Figure 3-9.



Note: Switch 2 is connected to CHK on the parallel port.

Figure 3-9. Mouse Interface Pin Assignment

3.5.4 The Keyboard Interface

The keyboard interface consists of a 1/4 inch stereo phone jack connector. It is defined as follows:

| | |
|--------|--------|
| Ring | Data |
| Shield | Ground |
| Tip | +5 V |

3.5.5 Composite Video Interface

This interface consists of a phone jack at the back of the cabinet. It is available to drive an external CRT monitor.

The signal levels conform to RS170. The horizontal sweep rate is 22,400 Hz and the vertical refresh rate is 60 Hz.

CHAPTER 4. THE PROCESSOR BOARD

The heart of the Lisa is the processor board. It contains the following major logic components:

- * Central processing unit (CPU)
- * Memory management unit (MMU)
- * Timing generation
- * Memory timing
- * Video generation
- * Interrupt control
- * I/O decode
- * Direct memory access (DMA), error address, and flag latches.

The processor board is so called because it contains the logic associated with the 68000 CPU. It also contains the main memory management and bus control functions for the Lisa. Some additional circuitry, such as error latches and video control, are also located on this board for convenience.

The function of the processor board is to execute the Lisa software, provide main timing for communication within the Lisa, and to provide additional control functions for the video logic.

4.1 Processor Board Block Diagram

An overview of how the components on the processor board logically interact is shown in Figure 4-1. Refer also to Figure 1-2 in Chapter 1, which gives an overview of the Lisa in block diagram form.

Figure 4-1. Processor Board Block Diagram

The processor board is capable of performing a number of operations that involve data flow within the board. Since both processor and video memory cycles are interleaved within one machine cycle, this leads to two major data paths during operation. Additionally, data transfer to and from peripheral devices during normal or DMA cycles gives rise to two other cycles, plus the path that loads the DMA address latch.

Addresses generated by the CPU are translated from logical to physical addresses by means of the MMU. A discussion of MMU programming can be found in section 2.3. Addresses generated by the video or the DMA logic are not subject to translation, i.e., they are physical addresses.

ROM provides non-volatile storage that is used during power-up initialization for bootstrap of the operating system. It can be addressed either with or without use of the MMU.

Internal timing on the board and on the bus conforms to the timing requirements of the 68000, as described in the 68000 User's Manual. Operation of RAM memory is controlled by additional timing logic on the processor board.

The data-flow paths within the processor board are

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

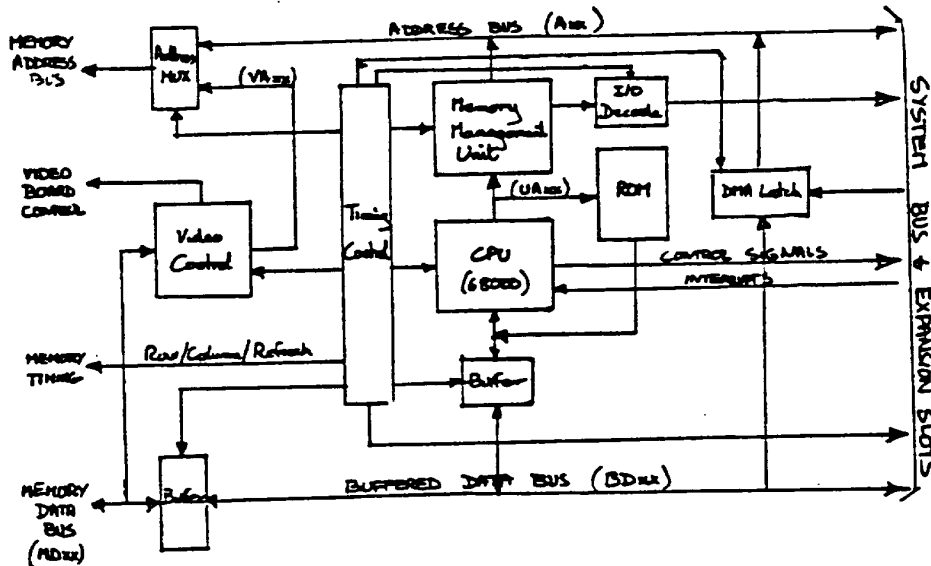


Figure 4-1. Processor Board Block Diagram

P.P.

4-2b

classified as follows:

- * CPU memory access
- * Video memory access
- * CPU access to I/O
- * I/O access to the DMA address latch
- * I/O access to memory.

Video memory access and I/O memory access can occur simultaneously because of the separation of the control lines and data paths involved. These classes are discussed in the following subsections.

4.1.1 CPU Access to Memory

CPU and video memory cycles are interleaved on the memory bus. Every memory cycle takes 400 ns. A video cycle occurs every 800 ns; a CPU cycle can occur between any two video cycles. The paths used in memory access are shown in Figure 4-2.

The CPU generates the 24-bit logical memory address during the previous video cycle. This address is presented to the MMU, which performs access checks and address translation in time to present a physical address to the memory board at the beginning of the CPU memory cycle.

The buffered data bus is used to transfer data between memory and the CPU under control of bus signals manipulated by the CPU.

Figure 4-2. CPU Access to Memory

4.1.2 Video Access to Memory

The video cycle is used to access the bit-mapped display data located in main memory. The paths used by the video control to access memory data are shown in Figure 4-3.

The video control generates physical addresses that are presented to the memory addressing multiplexer on the processor board for direct access to the memory location. Data that is read out of memory in this way is presented to the video control via the memory data bus.

SEPTEMBER 1983

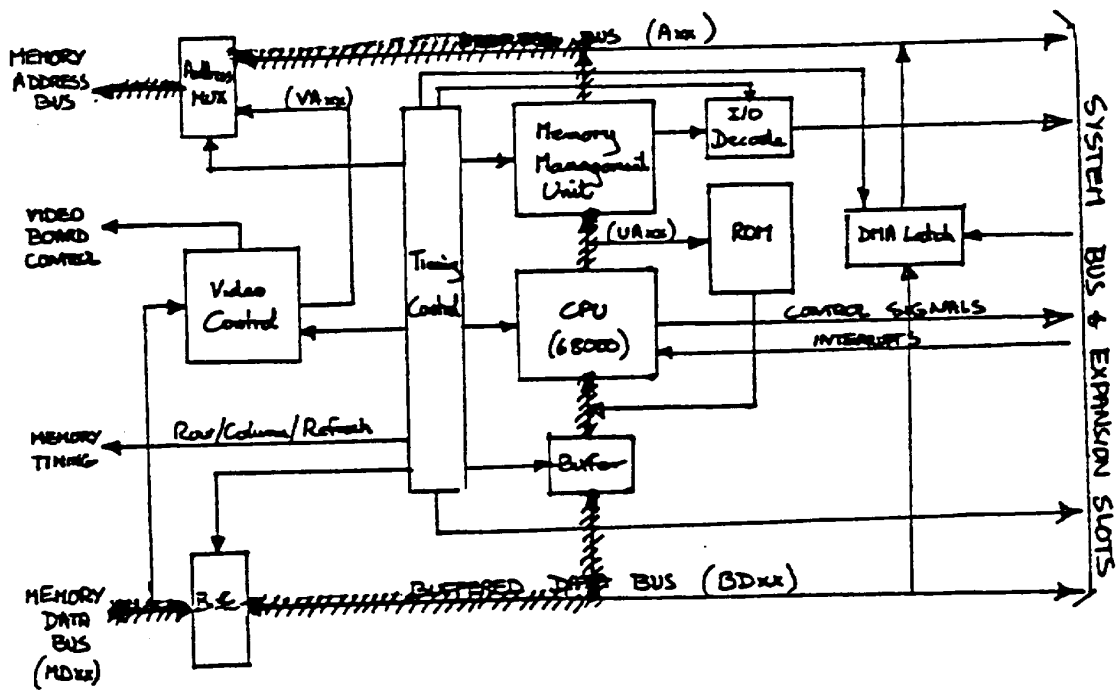


Figure 4-2. CPU Access to Memory

4-52
4-4b

Figure 4-3. Video Access of Memory

4.1.3 CPU Access to I/O

The CPU communicates with I/O over the system bus. I/O can be a device either located on the I/O board, which is always resident, or can be located on an expansion board in one of the expansion slots.

The CPU generates the logical address of the I/O device with which it wishes to communicate and presents it to the MMU in a manner similar to a normal memory access.

Within the MMU, the SLR contains information that defines the segment being accessed as valid I/O space. This condition inhibits any memory access and instead presents the address generated by the MMU to the I/O decode logic.

The I/O decode logic generates an enabling signal to the board on which the device is resident, and the data transfer takes place via the system bus. Refer to Figure 4-4 for an overview of the paths taken.

Note that this cycle can be simultaneous with an access to memory by the video control, since no logic or data path is common to both.

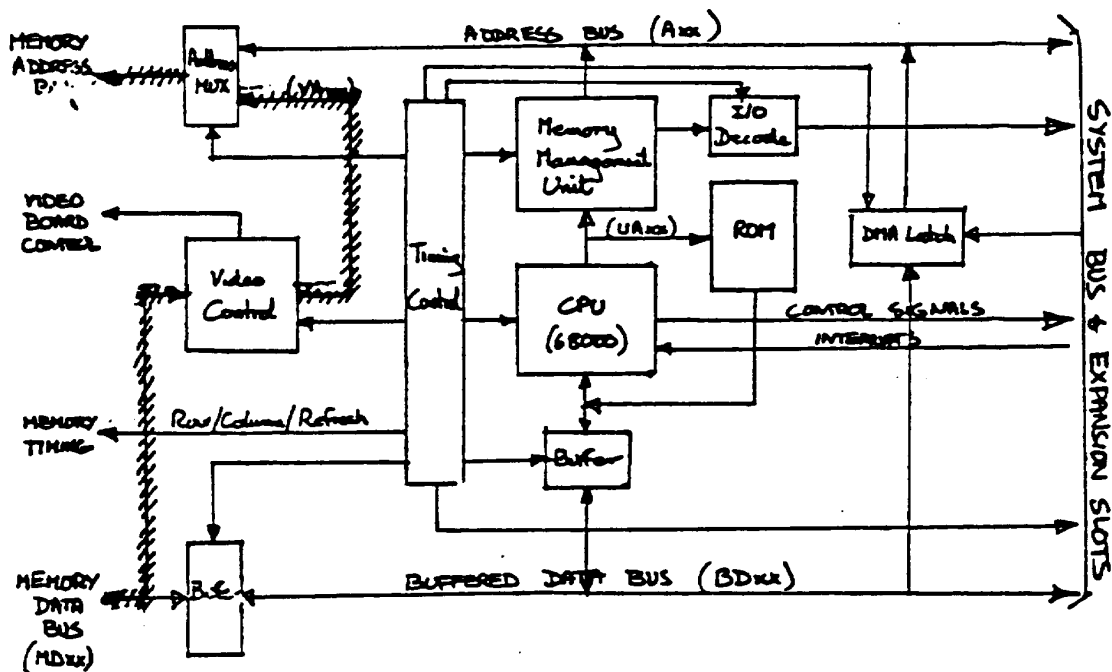


Figure 4-3. Video Access of Memory

4-6
5b

Figure 4-4. CPU Access to I/O

4.1.4 I/O Access to DMA Address Latch

Transfer of data between main memory and I/O devices in the Lisa can take place under DMA control. This relieves the CPU from involvement in the transfer of every byte to and from the peripheral.

In order to generate the required physical addresses and to present them to memory, the processor board is equipped with a latch to hold the high-order byte of the memory address. When the high-order byte is to be changed to allow access to another block, the DMA controller can load the latch as shown in Figure 4-5.

Note that this operation does not require use of the memory bus and can therefore proceed in parallel with a video access to memory.

September 7th 1982

LISA hardware manual

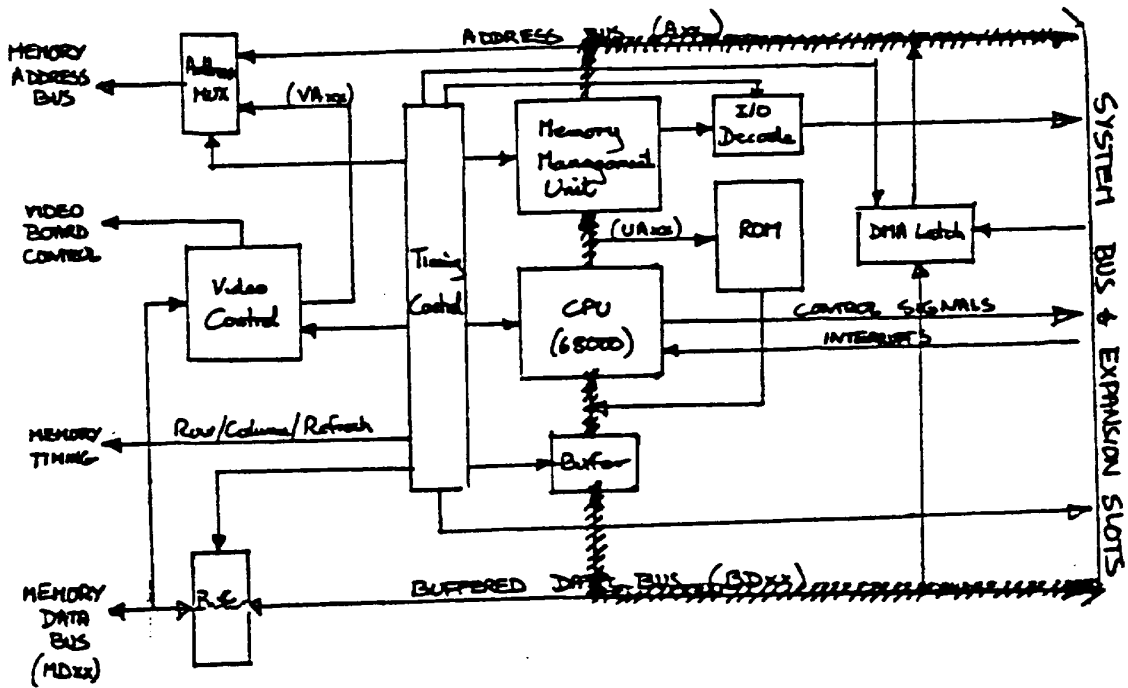


Figure 4-4. CPU Access to I/O

4-6b
4-8

Figure 4-5. I/O Access to DMA Address Latch

4.1.5 I/O Access to Memory (DMA)

As discussed in the previous subsection, the Lisa can use DMA to transfer data between memory and peripherals in a manner transparent to the CPU. The paths used to perform this are shown in Figure 4-6.

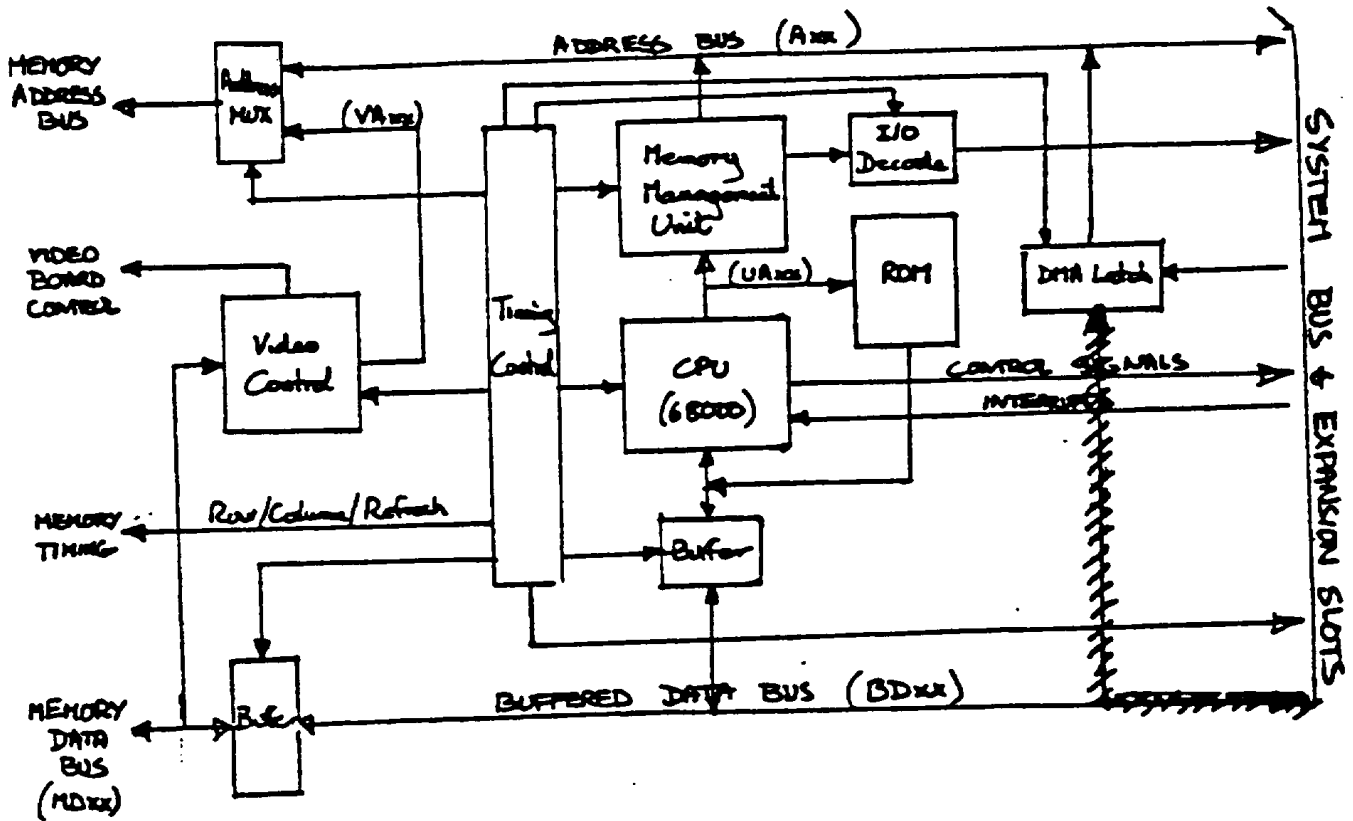


Figure 4-5. I/O Access to DMA Address Latch

7b
4-10e

Figure 4-6. I/O Access to Memory (DMA)

A physical memory address is generated by the DMA controller from the DMA address latch contents for the high-order byte and address lines A1-A12 to give the full address.

This address is presented to the memory in a manner identical to a normal CPU access, and the data are transferred via the buffered data bus.

No other data transfer can take place during this portion of a DMA cycle. Each series of DMA cycles begins with a procedure in which the CPU relinquishes control of the bus. From this time, all signals on the bus that are required for data transfer are generated by the DMA controller.

It is important that the design of I/O cards that use DMA takes into consideration the overall timing and software constraints as described in section 4.2. Since the CPU is not processing instructions at this time, the I/O card "replaces" the CPU and must generate signal patterns that are indistinguishable from those of the CPU.

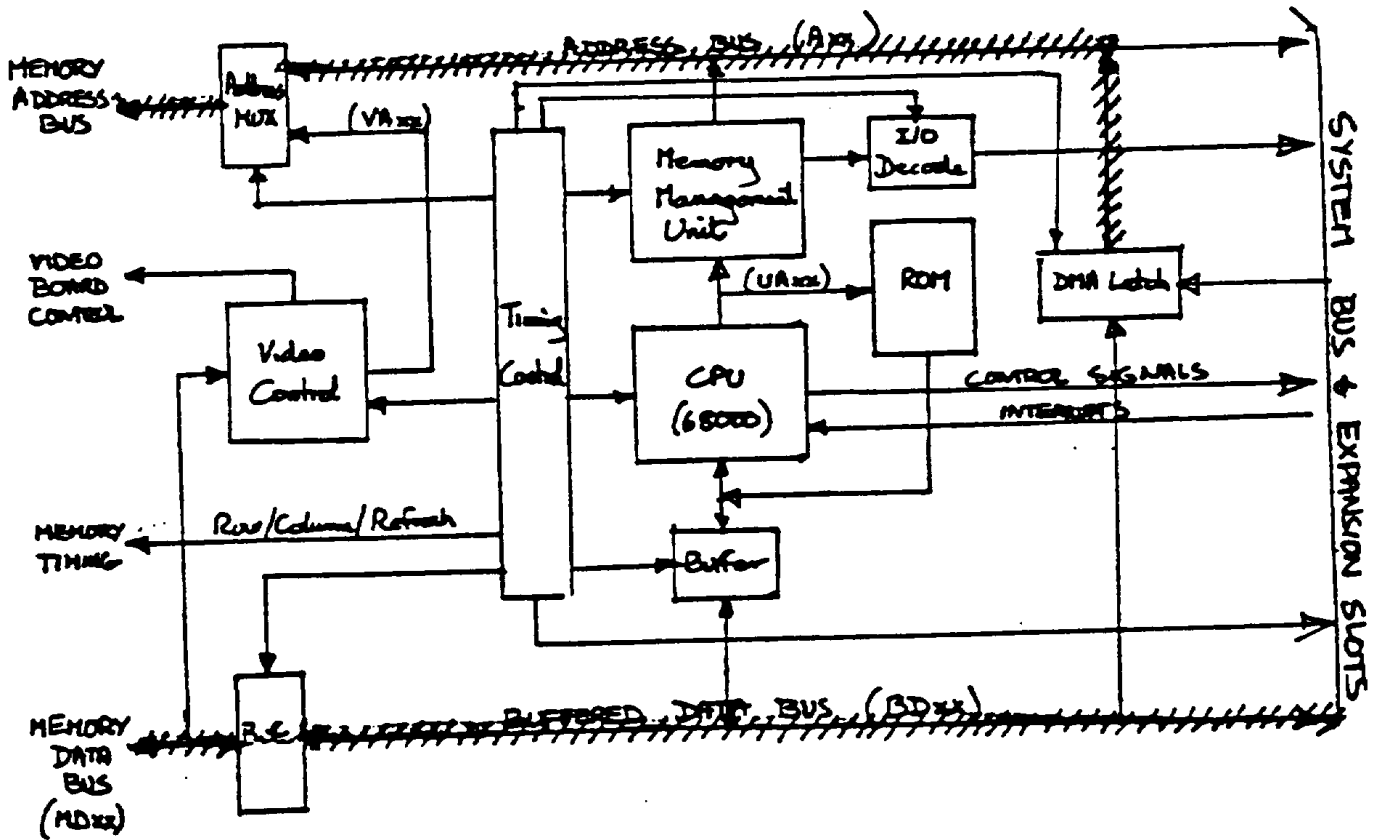


Figure 4-6. I/O Access to Memory (DMA)

8b
4-11e

4.2 Instruction Cycle and Timing

Apart from internal signals used on the board itself, the main signals generated by the processor board are used to control timing to the memory array, data refresh on the CRT screen via the video control, and data transfer on the system bus.

4.2.1 Internal Timing

The timing internal to the processor board is based on the timing of the 68000. The basic 800 ns 68000 bus cycle is divided into two equal halves. A 400 ns video cycle is followed by a 400 ns processor cycle.

A timing diagram of the principal signals internal to the processor board is shown in Figure 4-7.

Figure 4-7. Processor Board Internal Timing

Each half of the instruction cycle is in turn divided into eight timing periods t_0 through t_7 , each of 50 ns. These periods are generated by a 20.375 MHz signal called DOTCK. DOTCK is divided by four to provide the 5 MHz CPUCK signal used to clock the 68000. The processor board synchronizes to the 68000 so that the S- states of the 68000

September 7, 1984

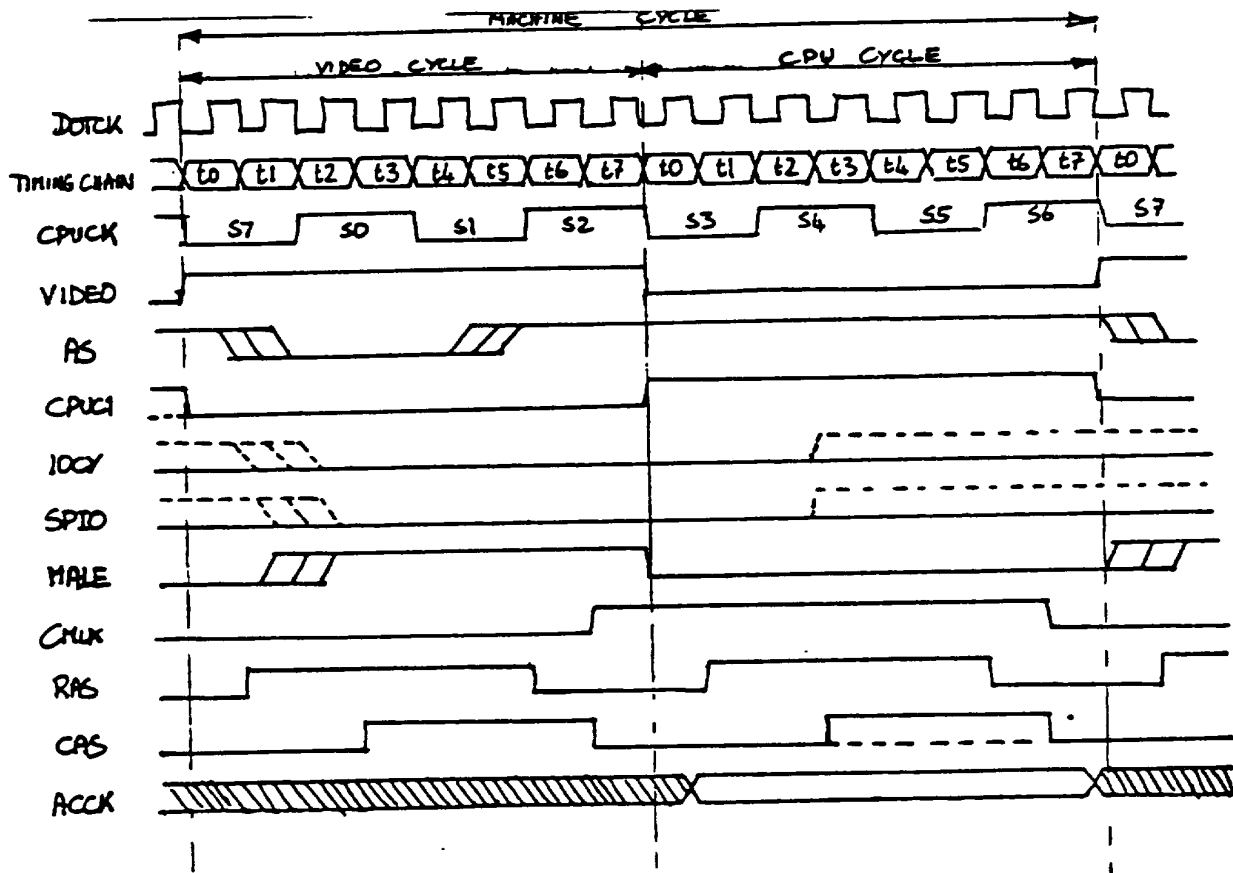


Figure 4-7. Processor Board Internal Timing

9b
4-13e

correspond, as shown in Figure 4-7.

This timing results in the address strobe (AS) signal being recognized during the video cycle, which permits the MMU to calculate and check the physical address in time for the result to be ready for the processor cycle.

The CPUC1 signal signifies the first cycle of a CPU instruction execution. The IOCY and SPIO signals indicate that an I/O or special I/O cycle is in progress. The IOCY and SPIO signals are generated from information contained in the MMU.

The Memory Address Latch Enable (MALE) signal is used as the selector between the two registers in the MMU that are associated with each logical address. When MALE is true, the segment origin register (SOR) is being accessed and the MMU is in the process of calculating the origin of the page being addressed. When MALE goes false, the segment limit register (SLR) is selected and the MMU calculates whether the address lies within the page limits.

The CMUX signal is used to select the source of the address which is to be presented to the memory. When deasserted, it gates the video address. When asserted, it gates the physical address presented by either the MMU or the DMA control.

Memory timing is controlled by the row and column address strobes (RAS) and (CAS). These and all of the other signals listed above are generated with reference to one or more of the t_0 through t_7 time periods.

4.2.2 Memory Management Timing

A logical address is being output from the 68000 when the address strobe signal is asserted. The MMU must process this and present the result to the memory on the basis of the type of access. In the case of a memory cycle, the physical address must be stable in time for presentation to the memory along with the row and column strobes.

In addition, the timing of each special I/O cycle with which data are written into an MMU register involves signals not used in any other operation. Figure 4-8 shows a sequence of operations as follows:

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

- * The beginning of a relocate/check cycle
- * The execution of a write to the MMU.

Figure 4-8. MMU Timing Diagram

The MALE signal selects between relocate mode, based on the SOR, and check mode, based on the SLR. MALE directly generates the base/limit (B/L/) selection signal.

The FC2 signal originates in the 68000. It is asserted to indicate that the processor is currently in supervisor mode. Mapping is forced to the supervisor context, context 0, when FC2 is asserted.

A write cycle to the MMU is a special I/O cycle and begins with the assertion of the SPIO signal, which directly generates the MMUIO signal. This causes

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

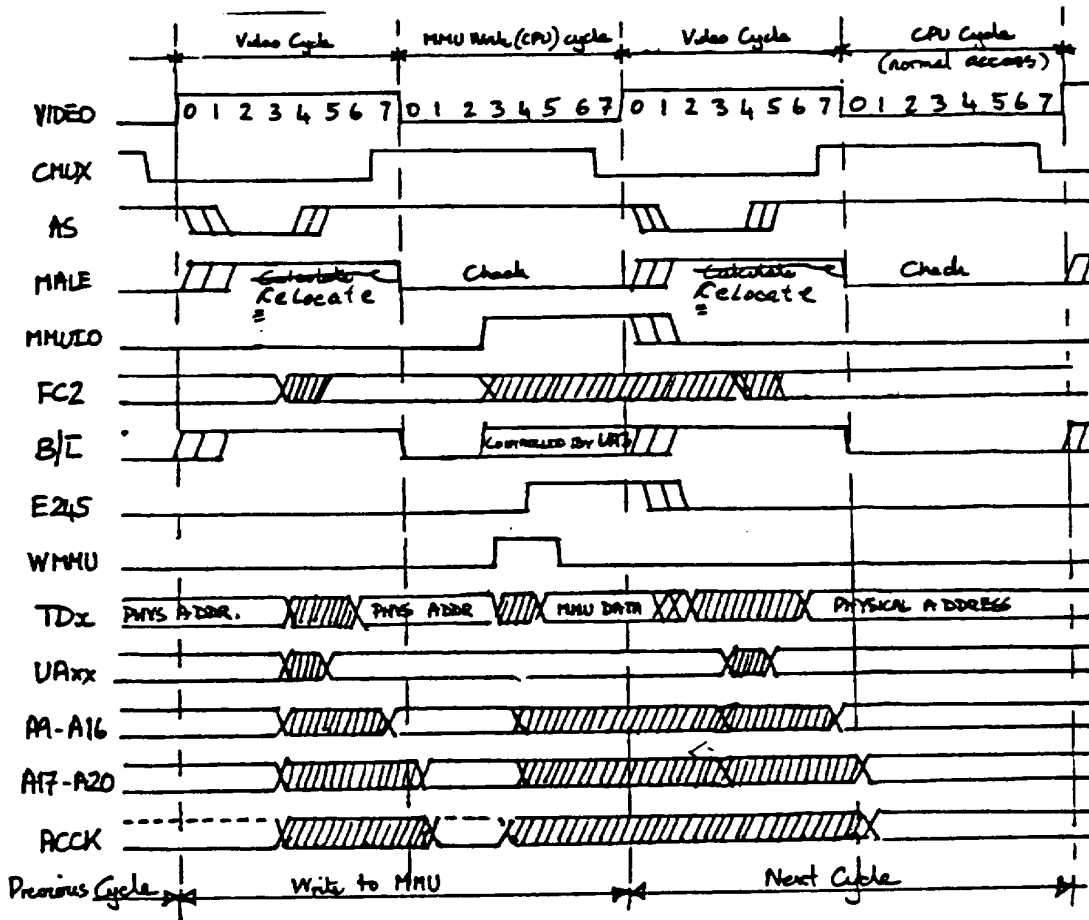


Figure 4-8. MMU Timing Diagram

116
4-15e

the B/L/ signal to be controlled by the UA3 address line to select between the SOR and the SLR, and the SEG1 and SEG2 bits define the currently addressed context.

The output of the MMU memory is disabled when the WMMU signal is asserted and the data to be written is placed on the TD lines by means of the E245 signal.

Note that the address lines are divided into three groups as regards timing. These are:

- * The unbuffered address (UA) lines. These do not pass through the MMU and are therefore stable first.
- * The A9-A16 lines. These are generated by the MMU and presented almost directly to the I/O decode and memory after the skew inherent in the MMU access time.
- * The A17-A20 lines. These suffer an additional delay due in the adder chain.

4.2.3 Memory Timing

The memory boards contain the memory array itself, some error-detection circuitry, and the necessary latches and drivers. Most of the memory control signals are generated by the processor board and presented to the memory board via the memory bus.

The 800 ns 68000 bus cycle includes two separate 400 ns memory cycles. The signals that control these on the interface to the memory boards are shown in Figure 4-9.

Figure 4-9. Memory Control Timing Diagram

The CMUX signal is used to select between the video and the processor addresses being presented to the memory. The contents of the RAS signals are controlled by the CMUX and the RAS signals.

The A9-A16 and A17-A20 are generated by the MMU and are used to generate column address and board or device selection within memory. The RAS signal is present for every video cycle unless the cycle and once during every 68000 bus cycle.

The CAS signal is generated for each video cycle, but can be absent from a processor cycle if no memory access is taking place. This is indicated by the deassertion of CASEN.

The VA8-11 are representative of the timing of all video address signals. These are also used in the generation of the refresh address in the memory since video accesses are always to sequential locations. Refresh takes place during the video cycle.

Selection of refresh for a particular board is

SEPTEMBER 1983

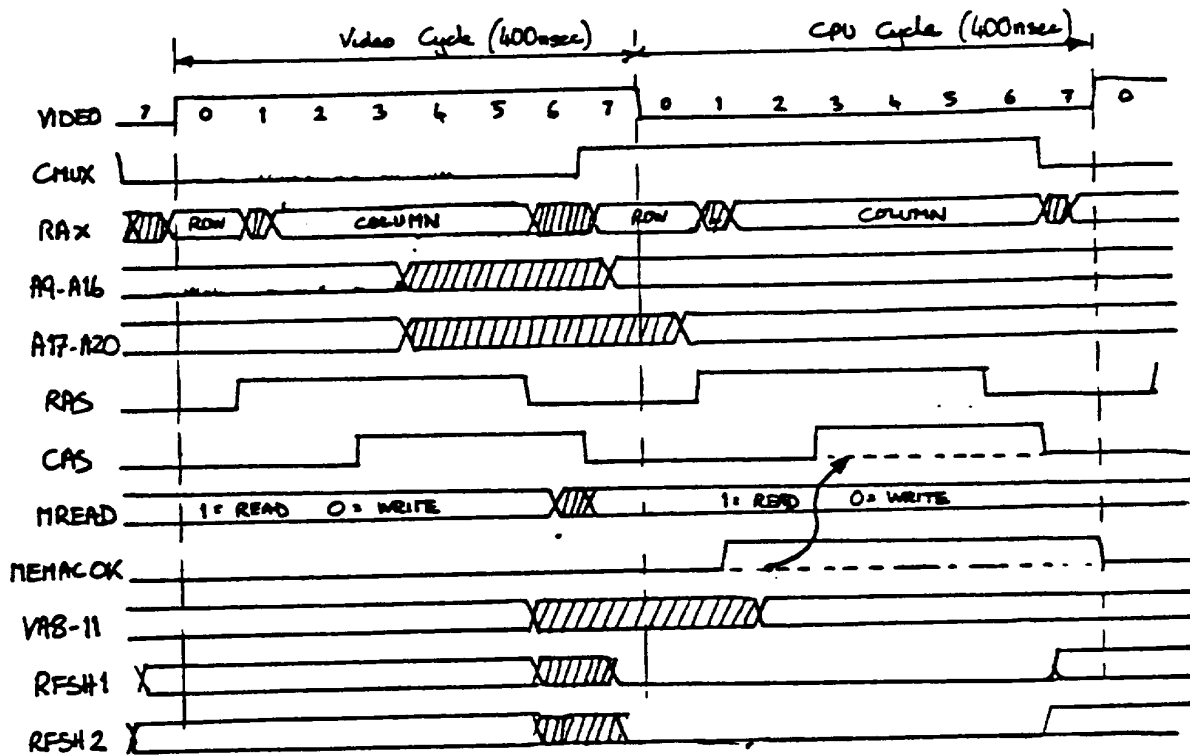


Figure 4-9. Memory Control Timing Diagram

136
4-17e

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

controlled by the RFSH1 and RFSH2 signals. Details are discussed in section 5.3.

4.2.4 Video Timing

The video board, which contains the analog circuits necessary to control the CRT, is described in Chapter 8. Timing signals for the transfer of data to the CRT are shown under processor board control. Figure 4-10 shows the timing diagram for the signals generated.

Figure 4-10. Video Control Timing Diagram

The video control contains a shift register that is loaded at the end of a video access and then shifted out at a rate of 1bit/50 ns, 20 MHz, to provide the bit-serial data stream to the video board.

The data stream continues to be read whenever the end of a line is reached and a horizontal retrace is being performed. However, the data are ignored and the video address counter is not incremented. In a similar fashion, data are not read out during the vertical retrace.

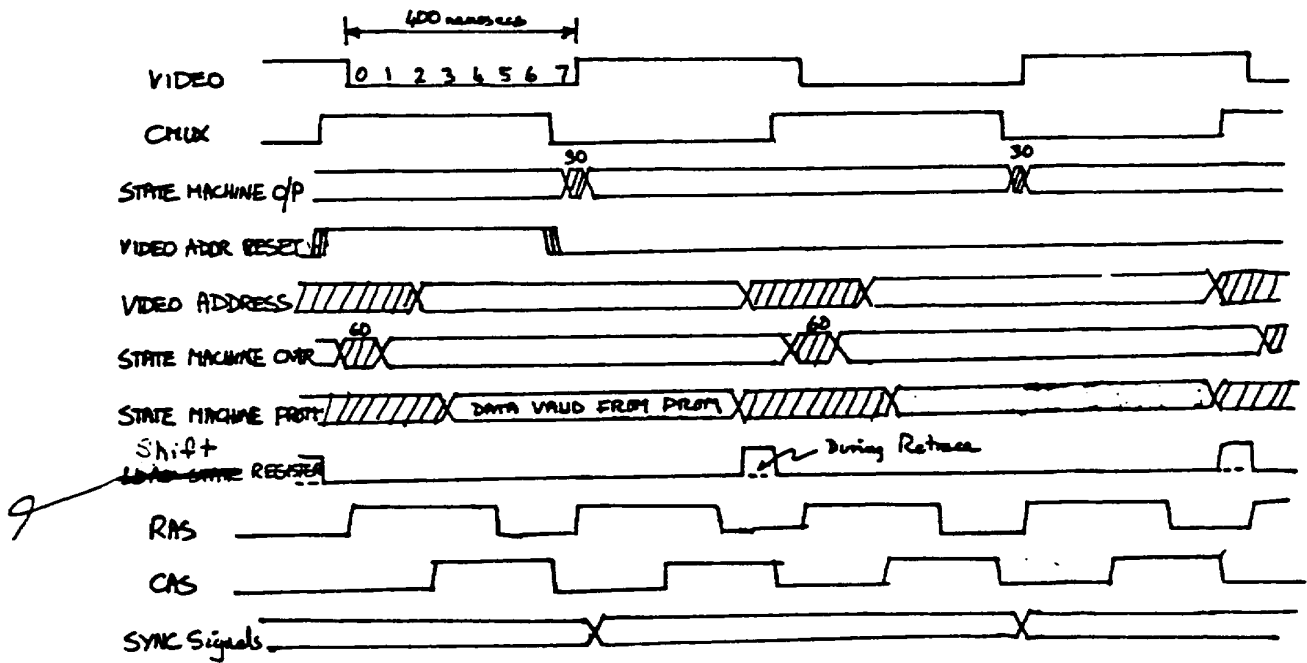


Figure 4-10. Video Control Timing Diagram

146
4-19

Timing for video control is performed by a state machine and is synchronized with the VIDEO signal. The shifting of the bits out to the video board is performed by the DOTCK.

The state machine counter is clocked with the falling edge of the VIDEO signal. The rising edge of this signal latches the current output from the state machine PROM.

The video address is reset once per page. This occurs after 379 lines of 720 pixels each. Only 364 lines are displayed on the screen. The timing of the video data within a page is shown in Figure 4-11.

Figure 4-11. Video Page Timing

The last pixel of each page must be a 1 (one) in order that the retrace is black. This is done by having a "one" in the least significant bit of the 32,767th byte displayed.

4.3 The Central Processing Unit

The heart of the Lisa is the 68000 32/16-bit processor, which is described in detail in the 68000 User's

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

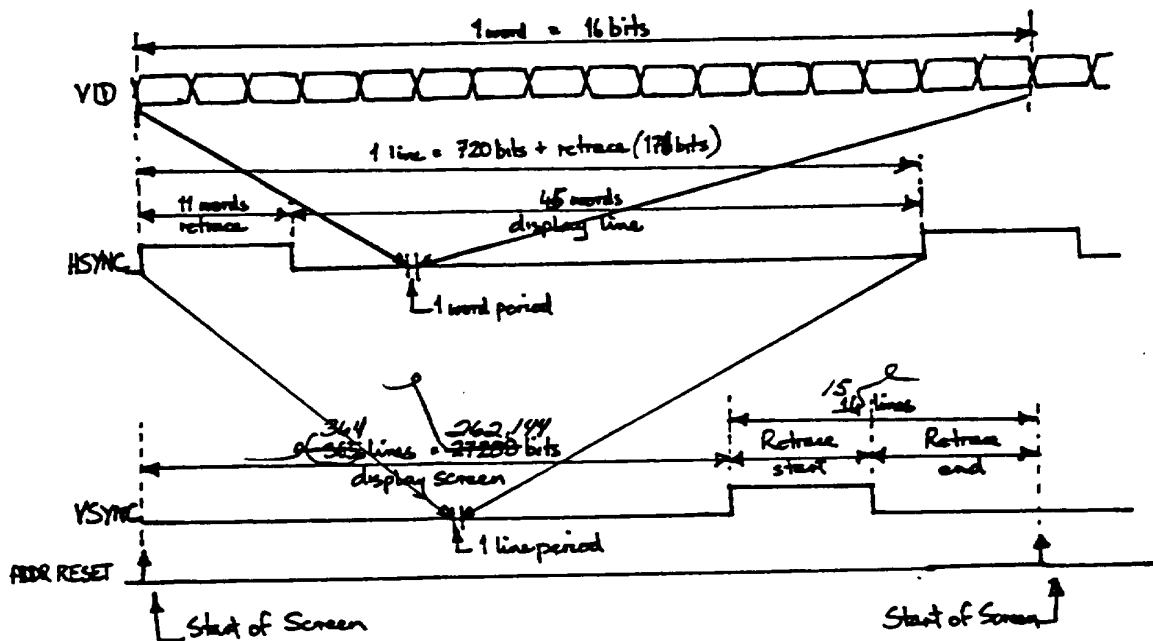


Figure 4-11. Video Page Timing

15b
4-21c

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Manual. Refer to drawing 050-4009 in Appendix A for schematics of the devices discussed in this section. Page 3 of the schematics shows the CPU at location A3-D3.

4.3.1 Clock Generation

Timing generation is shown on sheet 2. At B-4, crystal Y1 and its associated oscillator circuit are used to generate the DOTCK and CK signals. These both have a period of 50 ns and have the waveform shown on Figure 4-12.

The DOTCK signal is used to provide timing to the video control, which shifts bits serially to the video board. These bits are then displayed on the screen. CK drives the 4-bit synchronous counter at D4, sheet 2, whose outputs are decoded to provide the eight timing states t0/ through t7/, plus the VIDEO signal, as shown in Figure 4-12.

The QB output has a period of 200 ns. It is used as the 68000 clock and also generates the main clock CPUCK, which is distributed through the Lisa.

Figure 4-12. Processor Board Timing Generation

September 7th 1984

LISA BUS SIGNALS

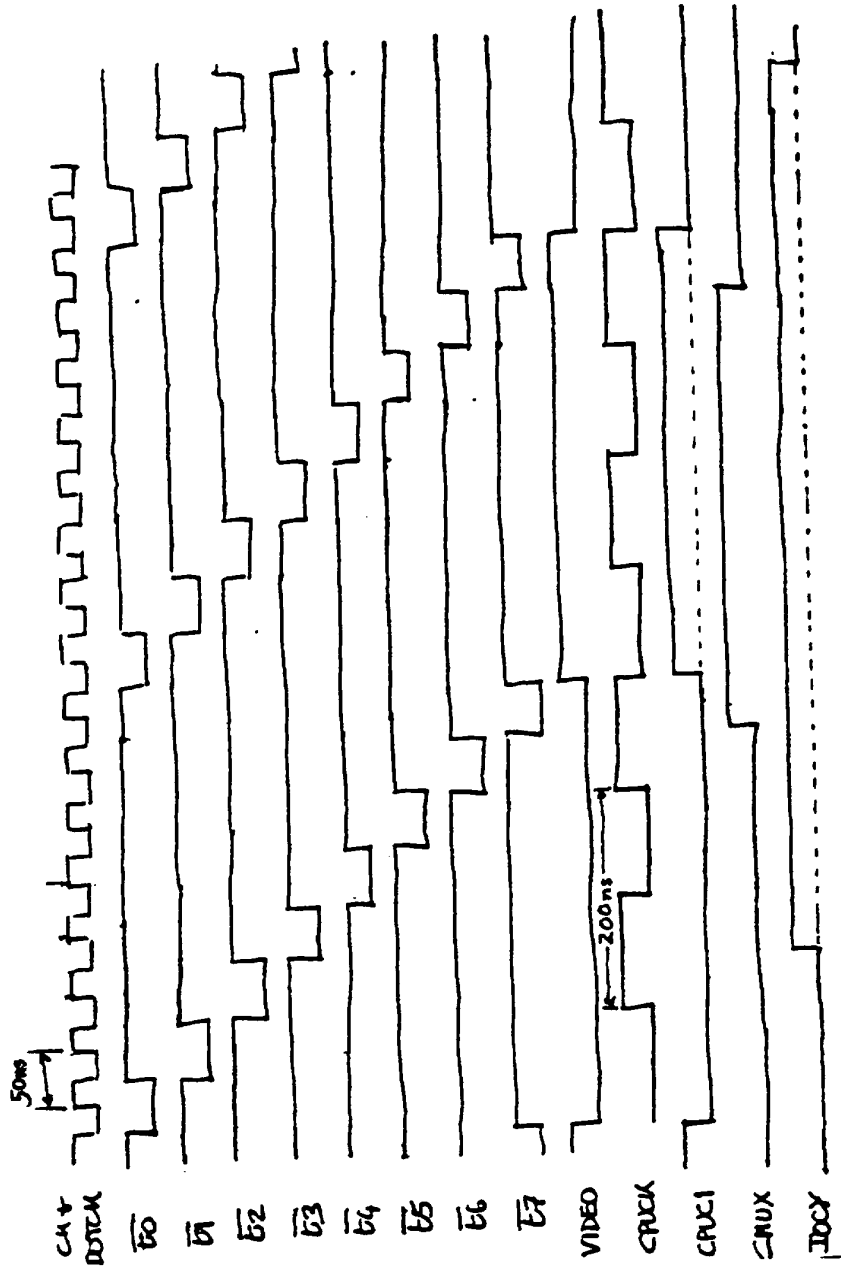


Figure 4-12. Processor Board Timing Generation

116b
4-222

4.3.2 Processor Control Signals

The six main bus control signals are buffered by the LS244 at C-3 on sheet 3. This is enabled when the bus grant acknowledge (BGACK/) signal has been deasserted. In other words, the bus is released at the same time that the bus grant acknowledge is generated, which allows the device to take control of the bus.

Note that UAS/ constitutes an unbuffered address strobe, which is not gated as above. The 68000 is synchronized with the AS signal. This signal should be used for synchronization on the board whether the bus is under CPU control or not.

The status signals FC0, FC1, and FC2 are decoded to provide the IAK and IAK/ signals. These latter signals are used to gate the address of the device that generated an interrupt. The FC2 signal is used to distinguish between supervisor and user mode cycles.

Incoming interrupts are encoded by priority through the LS148 at C-4 and presented to the IPL0-IPL2 inputs of the 68000. The system RESET is buffered and chained through the 7417 at D-3, whose output is pulled up through R12. Other control signals interface directly to the bus drivers, with no buffering.

4.3.3 Address and Data Lines

Address lines UA9 to UA23 are presented directly to the MMU, since these are the bits that define the segment and page of memory that is being addressed. Refer to section 2.3 for a discussion of the MMU address translation process.

The eight low-order bits, A1 to A8, are buffered through the LS244 at A-3, sheet 3, which is gated with BGACK/ to release the memory bus when the CPU relinquishes bus control.

The 16 data lines, D0 to D15, are buffered by the bidirectional LS245s at A-4 and B-4. These are enabled by the DBON/ . The direction is selected by the READ signal.

4.3.4 Bootstrap ROM

The bootstrap ROM is used during power-up to provide initial programs that permit the operating system to be loaded from a mass storage peripheral, and the Lisa itself, to be initialized to a known configuration.

The ROM is accessed by means of special I/O cycles. The ROM consists of the two devices shown at locations A-2 and B-2 on sheet 3.

Note that the ROM is addressed directly by the address lines from the 68000. This means that the ROM addressing does not require that the MMU be operational. Therefore bootstrap routines execute correctly out of ROM before the MMU has been configured at initialization time.

The ROM is enabled by the ROM/ signal. This signal is asserted whenever a special I/O cycle is in process while UA15 is high and UA16 is low.

4.4 The Memory Management Unit (MMU)

The function of the MMU is to translate logical addresses used by the software into physical addresses. This is performed in terms of logical pages of 512 bytes within logical segments of 128 Kbytes.

The operation of the MMU is discussed in section 2.3 above. Address lines UA1-UA8 are not operated on by the MMU. UA17-UA23 are used to select one of the 128 possible logical segments, while UA9-UA16 address a page within that segment.

At the same time, the entire logical address space is in one of four possible contexts, selected by the SEG1 and SEG2 signals. The MMU has four identical sets of registers, one for each context of 128 segments.

Each segment has two registers associated with it. The SOR contains 12 bits that give the page number with that the segment begins. The SLR contains 8 bits that supply the number of physical pages assigned to this segment, plus 4 bits that indicate the physical address space and other data about the physical segment.

The MMU is shown in simplified form in Figure 4-13. It is used to define three distinct physical address spaces. This is discussed in Chapter 2 in some detail. Refer also to Figure 2-4. The 68000 can access a maximum of 2 Mbytes of RAM, which is located on up to two boards, plus a distinct I/O space and an additional

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

special I/O space. Each address space is a 2 Mbyte block.

The MMU logic is shown on sheet 4 of schematic 050-4009 in Appendix A. It consists of RAM storage for the segment registers, address latches, and logic that permits the contents of the registers to be manipulated.

Figure 4-13. MMU Block Diagram

last edited by Pilkington

4-190

May 31 1983 @11am

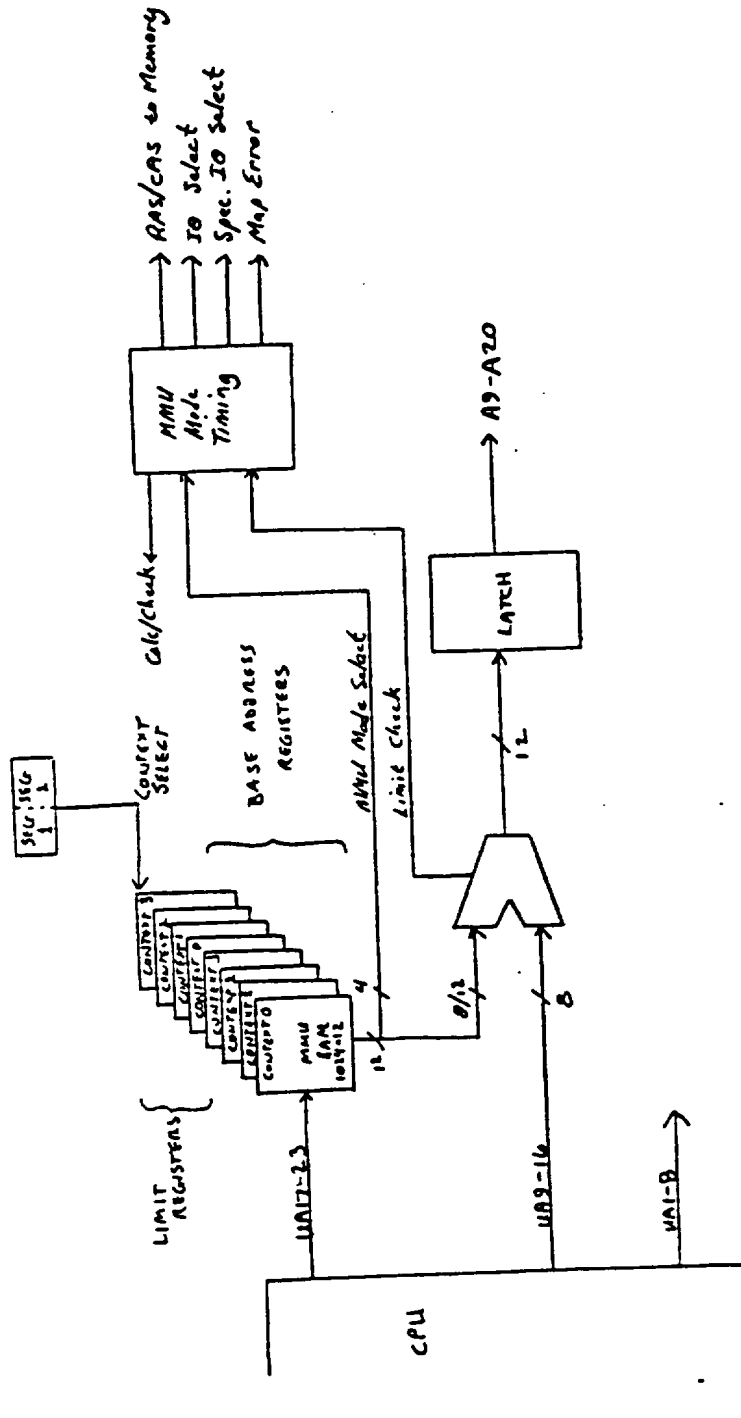


Figure 4-13. MMU Block Diagram

19b
4-26e

4.4.1 MMU RAM Storage

The registers of the MMU are organized within a 1K by 12 bit RAM memory matrix. These can be altered by software when the 68000 is in any mode. The operating system is responsible for controlling access to these registers. The register addresses are generated from the logical address. Their contents define the physical address.

The Lisa has a 16 Mbyte logical address space because of the architecture of the 68000. This entire space can function in one of four contexts, depending on the configuration of the SEG lines.

Each 16 Mbyte space is divided logically into 128 segments, each of which is allocated a pair of registers in the MMU that define segment parameters. This results in a total of 1024 registers, since the four contexts each contain 128 segments and each segment requires a pair of registers. This is shown in Figure 4-14.

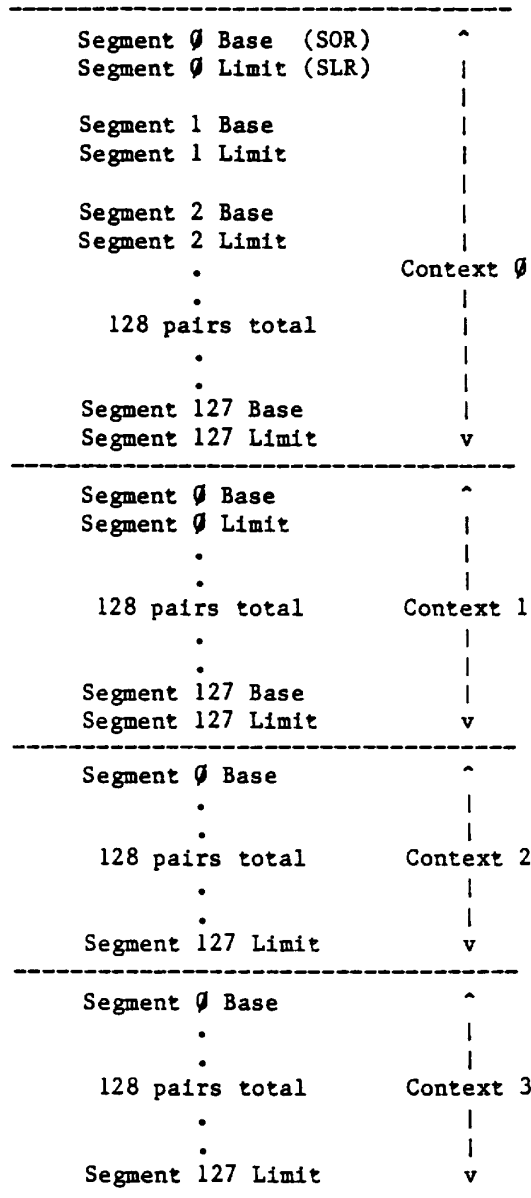


Figure 4-14. MMU Memory Configuration

The two registers for each segment are known as the SOR and the SLR, as described in Chapter 2.

The SOR defines the physical address of the first

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

byte of the segment. This is given as a multiple of 512-byte blocks. The first block in memory is thus defined by address $000000@16$.

The SLR defines the size of the segment in terms of multiples of 512-byte pages. It also contains a 4-bit code that defines the type of space, as outlined in Figure 2-4.

The MMU memory is thus logically divided into four sets of 128 pairs of 12-bit registers, each set being used only when the 68000 is running in the corresponding context. This enables software to perform context switching very rapidly.

Referring to schematic 050-4009, page 4, the ten lines used to address the MMU RAM can be seen as consisting of the following:

- * UA17-UA23, 7 address lines,
- * MS1 & MS2, from SEG1 & SEG2 lines,
- * B/L/, the base/limit select.

The address lines are the unbuffered high-order address lines from the 68000 CPU on sheet 3. The other signals are generated in the logic at C-4. Refer to Figure 4-8 for the timing relationships.

The crucial element of operation in the MMU is that it must first generate the physical address that is the origin of the memory page to be accessed. Then it must check whether the address lies within the limits of the page addressed.

These two functions are selected by the memory address latch enable (MALE) signal, which originates in a S109 JK flop on sheet 2. MALE is asserted at the end of a CPU cycle when the AS signal becomes deasserted. This typically occurs around the t_3 period of the video cycle. This asserts the B/L/ signal through the LS00 gate at C4, on sheet 4, which selects the base register.

The SEG1 and SEG2 latch is shown on sheet 5. The software defines the context in which the CPU is currently running by means of these two signals, except if the CPU is running in supervisor mode. Supervisor mode is indicated by the FC2 signal being asserted. The segment being addressed is defined by the UA17-UA23 signals.

When the conditions exist to set the CPU1 JK flop at B-2 on sheet 2, the same term is used to reset

the MALE flop at A-2. This occurs at the end of t_7 time during the video cycle. With MALE deasserted, the B/L/ term also becomes deasserted and the SLR that corresponds to the SOR just accessed is used to check the access limits and also give the type of cycle to be performed.

4.4.2 SOR and SLR Initialization

The MMU registers are in an undefined state when the Lisa is first powered on. The bootstrap ROM is not addressed via the MMU. This enables the CPU to operate initially without requiring that the MMU be functional.

Before RAM can be used, the registers that correspond to the contexts and segments being used must be initialized. The RAM that is used as the MMU register storage is accessed via special I/O space. This is decoded by the LS139 device at D-2 on sheet 5. The MMUIO/ signal enables the WMMU/ signal via the JK flop at D-4, on sheet 4. Refer to Figure 4-9 for signal timing relationships.

Each register is written to in a separate write cycle. The SEG1 and SEG2 lines are configured to the appropriate context and the UA17-UA23 lines select the segment. When the registers are written, the SOR or SLR are selected by the state of the UA3 line through the LS00 gate at C-4 on sheet 4.

The MMUIO signal is asserted when all the following conditions exist:

1. The SPIO signal is asserted
2. UA15 is asserted
3. UA16 is deasserted.

When MMUIO becomes asserted, the clear input of both S109 JK flops at D-4 are released, allowing the E245 signal to be asserted at t_4 time and WMMU/ to be deasserted at t_3 time if the 68000 is performing a read cycle.

The data to be written into the registers is presented to the MMU RAM via the two LS245 bidirectional drivers at C-3 and D-3. The direction in which the data are moved is controlled by the READ signal from the CPU.

The TD lines from the lower LS245 write the two low-order nibbles into the lower RAMs. The upper

nibble is base data for the SOR or access-type data for the SLR. Register contents can be read via the same path.

4.4.3 Address Translation

During the video half of the 68000 bus cycle, the SOR contents are read out as a 12-bit physical address that defines the physical address of the beginning of the segment at a 512-byte boundary.

This value is added to the page address that is presented to the other inputs of the adder by UA9-UA16. Note that the high-order input nibble is forced to zero. The result is presented to the LS373 latch at C-2 and the LS374 latch at B-2. On the falling edge of the MALE signal, which occurs at the end of the calculation involving SOR, the physical address is latched. This will be stable on the A9-A20 lines if the BGACK/ signal is deasserted, no DMA access in process, and CMUX is asserted to avoid conflict with the video address.

MALE being deasserted signals the second half of the 68000 bus cycle, when the access limits are checked. The B/L/ signal changes polarity and the contents of the SLR are read out.

The eight low-order bits, which indicate the number of pages contained in this segment, are also added to the page address given by the UA9-UA16 lines from the CPU. The overflow line from the second nibble is the access check (ACCK) signal. If ACCK is asserted, this indicates that the desired page lies outside the limit set for the segment in question.

An exception to this occurs when the control bits indicate that the accessed segment is a stack segment. Since the stack begins at the high-order address within the block, the significance of ACCK is inverted in this case. This function is implemented in the S86 gate at B-3 on sheet 2.

An overflow results in the suppression of the CAS/ signal, which prevents any memory operation from taking place. The output of the high-order nibble of the adder is ignored.

The high-order nibble of the SLR contents provide flags for the type of segment that is being accessed. These indicate:

* Segment in memory space (MEM)

- * Segment in I/O space (IO)
- * Segment that is read-only (RO)
- * Segment that contains the stack (STK).

Refer to Figure 2-4 for the full coding permutations possible, since all combinations are neither valid nor covered by the above. These signals in turn generate the appropriate control signals for the type of segment indicated.

The MEM term being asserted, MEM/ low, enables the CAS signal for a memory access via the LS02 gate at C-3 on sheet 2.

The IO term being asserted initiates an I/O cycle via the IOCY flop at B-1 on sheet 2.

The RO term being asserted inhibits a write cycle to memory via the ALS32 gate at B-3 on sheet 2. It also inhibits an SPIO cycle by being one of the terms on the LS260 gate at C-1.

The STK term being asserted causes a carry input to be presented to the low-order adder via the F02 gate at A-3 on sheet 4. This is done because of the stack configuration, which begins at the top of the segment and decrements through memory from there.

4.4.4 Memory Timing Generation

Memory control timing is shown in Figure 4-9. Since the nine low-order bits of the address are presented directly from the CPU, these are used as memory row addresses. This avoids the need to wait for the output of the MMU to become stable before any memory addressing can be done.

The RAS is enabled through the LS32 OR gate at D-4 on sheet 2 of the schematics. RAS goes true at the end of the t0 state and goes false at the end of t5. Note that RAS is generated even for cycles that turn out to be I/O or erroneous. This does no harm provided that CAS is generated for such cycles. The only time that RAS is generated for a memory cycle is if the current cycle is a video cycle and is not the first of a multi-cycle CPU access.

The CAS has an enable signal that is the logical OR of a number of terms:

- * If a video cycle is in process

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

- * If a DMA cycle is in process (BGACK!.CPU1)
- * If no error was detected in a memory cycle.

This last term requires that a number of factors be satisfied:

- * A memory cycle is in process (MEM!.CPU1),
- * No attempt is made to write to a read-only segment (READ/!.RO),
- * The segment limit was not exceeded (ACCK).

If CAS is enabled, it will go true at the end of t2 and goes false at the end of t6.

The signal requesting a read from the memory is MREAD. It is generated through the S02 gate at D-2 on sheet 5. Refresh of the memory is generated by two gates at A-4, sheet 2. One of the two signals R1 and R2 is provided to the memory board for use as a refresh enable. Each occurs when either, but not both, of the VA8 and VA11 video address signals is asserted.

4.5 Video Control

The video control is shown in Figure 4-15 and consists of the following components:

- * Video address counter, VA1-VA14,
- * Shift register
- * Video state machine
- * Video page register, VA15-VA20.

The 32 Kbytes of memory in which a full video screen is stored is sequentially accessed once every 1/60th of a second.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Figure 4-15. Video Control Block Diagram

4.5.1 Video Address Counter

The video address counter points to the location in the 32 Kbyte video page of the next data byte to be fed to the display. It is incremented once for every 16 active pixels that are fed into the video board, and it is reset at the end of each vertical retrace.

The circuitry is shown on sheet 5 of schematic 050-4009. It consists of the two LS393 counters at B-4. The counters are arranged in series and the outputs fed to the memory address MUX in the upper right of sheet 4. The counter is clocked on the leading edge of each t7 state via the JK flop at B-3, sheet 5. It is reset synchronously with CMUX when the video state machine determines that the vertical retrace has been completed.

4.5.2 Video Data Shift Register

This is used to convert the 16-bit words of video data read out of memory into the serial data stream required by the video board.

The circuit is also shown on sheet 5 of the schematics. It consists of the two LS166 devices at

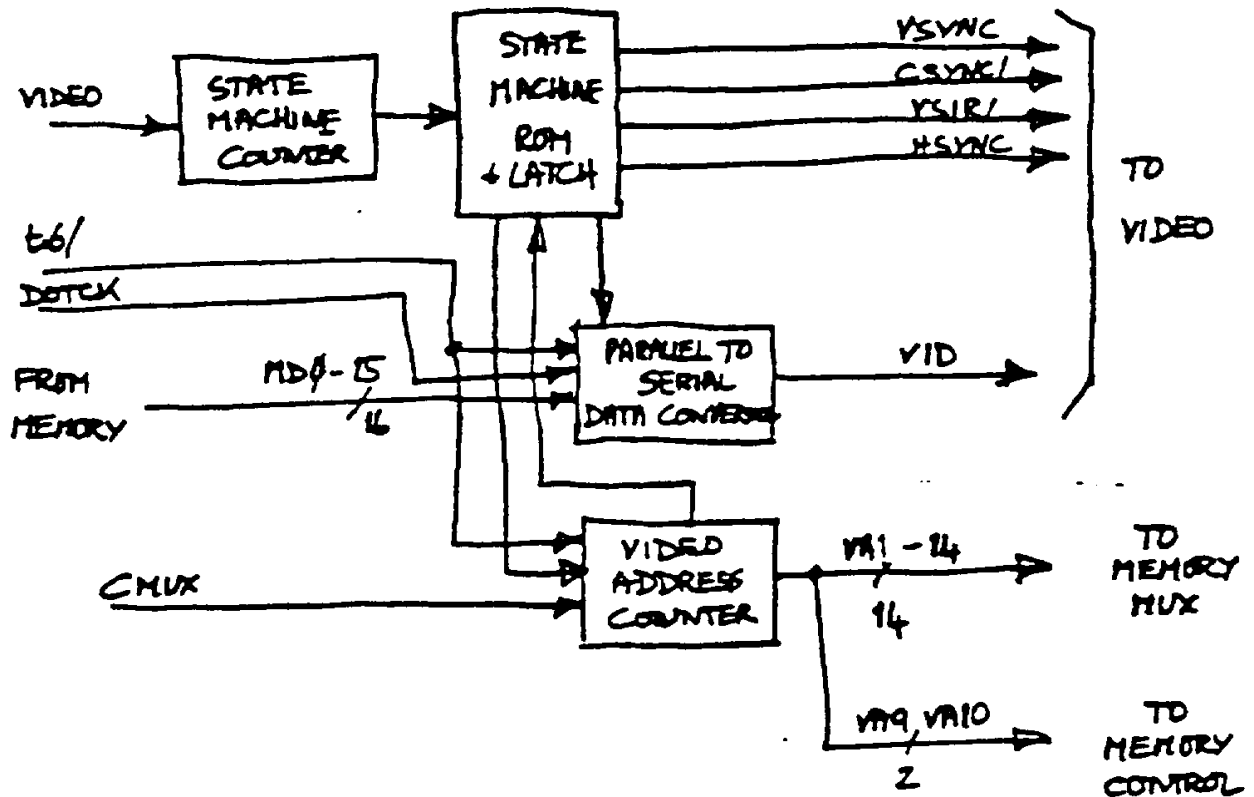


Figure 4-15. Video Control Block Diagram

276
4-34c

B-3 and some associated circuitry. The clock that increments the video address counter is also used to parallel load the shift register with data presented on MD0-MD15.

The DOTCK signal from C-4 on sheet 2 is used to shift the data out to the VID output via the JK flop at C-3 on sheet 5. This flop has been inserted in the data path to ensure a uniform hold length for each data bit. If this were not present, the final bit in each word could be curtailed, since the next word is parallel-loaded into the shift register.

The INVID/ signal provides an inverted polarity of the video signal. It can also be used as a serial input to the shift register for test purposes. The shift register presents a pixel to the video board every 50 ns.

4.5.3 Video State Machine

The video state machine is used to monitor the position on the screen at which the current data are to be placed. It counts up to the number of words in one line, performs a horizontal retrace, resets itself and then resumes. At the bottom of the screen it performs a vertical retrace.

The machine is shown on sheet 5 of the schematics and consists of the LS393 counter at D-4, the 6309-1 programmable ROM (PROM) at D-4, and the LS374 latch at D-3. The counter is clocked with the video signal. The video does access memory during the video retrace periods. Both the counter outputs and the VA9 and VA15 signals are used to address the PROM. The data output from the PROM is latched in the LS374 with the opposite edge of the same signal that clocks the counter.

The HSYNC/ and VSYNC/ signals are presented to the video board for use in horizontal and vertical synchronization of the data on the screen. Other outputs are used to clear the video address counter at the end of vertical retrace, generate the VSIR/ to interrupt the CPU during vertical retrace for cursor positioning and reset the shift register load flop and the state machine counter itself.

The state machine performs 45 normal word fetches and shifts in each line before performing a horizontal retrace and resetting itself. When it detects the 364th line by monitoring VA15, it generates a vertical sync of 6 lines duration,

followed by vertical sync termination of an additional 9 lines duration.

4.5.4 Video Page Register

The Video Page Register contains the six high-order bits of the address to be presented to memory, which are not provided by the Video Address Counter (A15-A20). This provides a physical address to the memory, that is, it is not translated by the MMU.

The circuit consists of the LS374 at B1 on sheet 4. It is loaded by the VAL/ signal, which is decoded from an I/O command at B-2 on sheet 5. It is gated as an address whenever the CMUX signal is false.

4.6 Bus Interfaces

The processor board interfaces to three other components inside the cabinet. These are the:

- * System bus
- * Memory board(s)
- * Video board.

The bus interfaces to all three are made by a single connector to the motherboard and are shown schematically in Figure 4-16.

The system bus on the motherboard is extended in part to become the expansion bus. This bus is effectively a subset of the system bus used by the I/O board. It is described in detail in section 3.4 of this manual.

Figure 4-16. Processor Board Bus Interfaces

4.6.1 System Bus Interface

The system bus operates under control of the processor board during most normal operations. An exception occurs when a peripheral controller performs data transfer to or from memory by means of a DMA operation.

Refer to Figure 4-16 for a signal list and pin assignment. An overview is also shown on sheet 1 of schematic 050-4009.

The system bus interface signals can be divided into the following categories:

- * Address lines

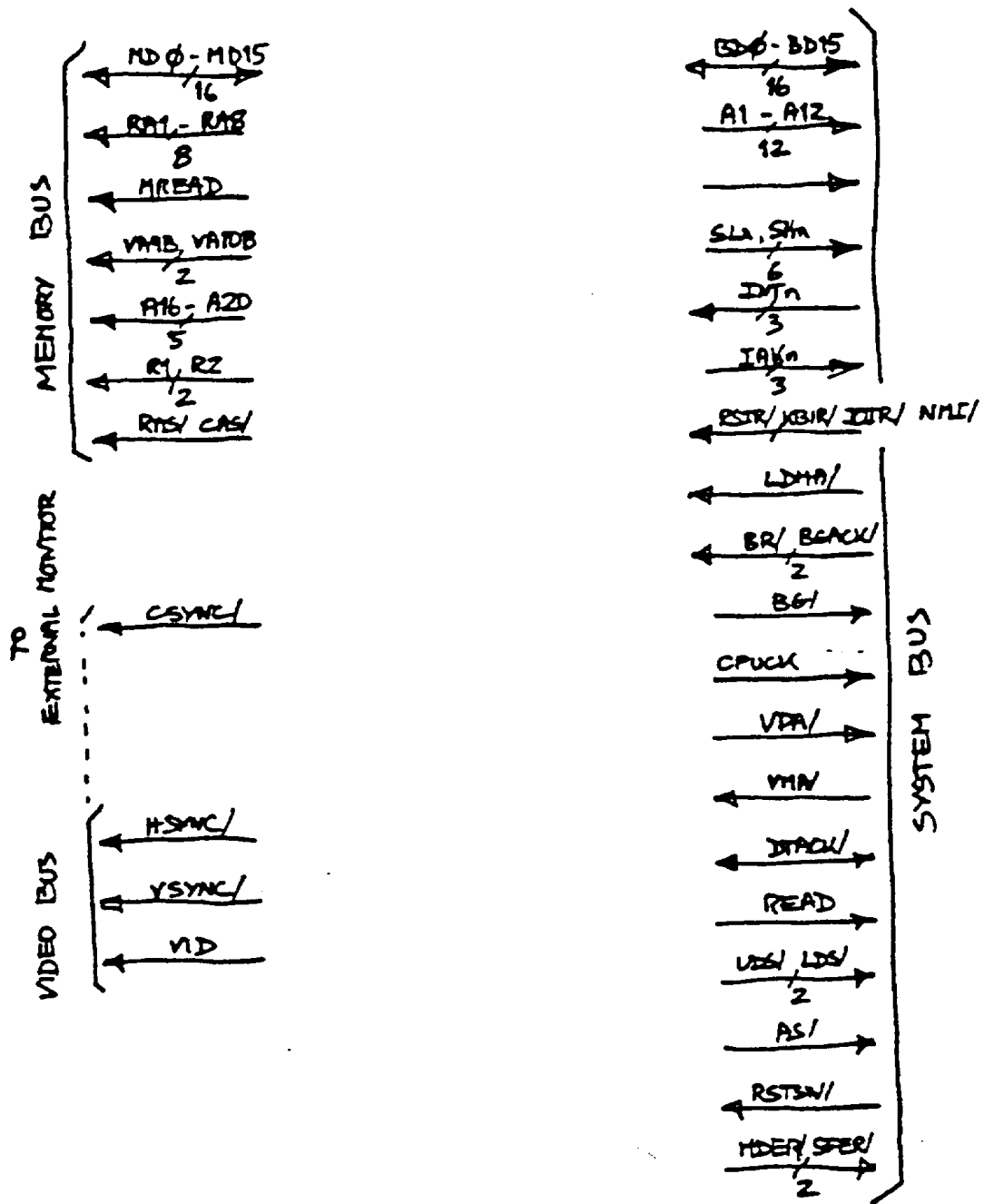


Figure 4-16. Processor Board Bus Interfaces

30b,
4-37c

- * Data lines
- * Asynchronous control lines
- * Bus arbitration lines
- * Interrupt control lines
- * Processor board control lines
- * I/O slot enable lines.

Address Lines

These consist of the 12 lines, A1 through A12, that are used to provide a physical address on the bus. A1 through A8 originate in the LS244 at A-3 on sheet 3, while A9 through A12 come from the MMU output latches at A-2 and B-2 on sheet 4. All signals to the bus are disabled by the BGACK/ signal being asserted.

Data Lines

These consist of the 16 lines, BD0 through BD16, that are used to transfer data on the bus. All 16 lines originate in the LS245 bidirectional drivers of both the CPU and the memory matrix at A-4 and B-4 on sheet 3. The CPU lines are enabled by the DBON/ signal, which is generated at B-2 on sheet 5 by having both the BGACK/ and SPIO/ signals deasserted. The memory lines are enabled by the MDEN/ signal which is synchronous with the CPUC1 signal whenever both IOCY/ and SPIO/ are false. This is shown at A-4 of sheet 3.

Asynchronous Control Lines

The following are used to control data transfers made on the bus.

AS/ strobes: a valid address that is present on the A1-A12 lines. It originates at C-3 on sheet 3.

READ: defines the cycle to be from memory to the accessing peripheral or processor. It originates at C-3 on sheet 3.

UDS/ and LDS/ : the upper and lower data strobes that define on which half of the BD0-BD15 lines a byte transfer is being made. They originate at C-3 on sheet 3.

DTACK/ : a data transfer acknowledge that indicates to the current bus master that

the asynchronous operation has been completed.

CPUCK: the clock used for the CPU itself. It is presented on the bus for synchronization purposes.

Bus Arbitration Lines

These signals are used to determine which device can operate as a bus master.

BR/ : the bus request line that is asserted by a slave device that wishes to have control of the bus.

BG/ : the grant signal with which the current master allows the requesting slave to take control of the bus. The signal originates directly on the CPU at C-3 on sheet 3.

BGACK/ : the signal with which the slave acknowledges that it has accepted the bus grant and has taken control of the bus.

Interrupt Control Lines

The following are used to determine the source of an interrupt and to acknowledge that the interrupt is being processed.

NMI/, RSIR/, INT0/, INT1/, INT2/, KBIR/, and IOIR/: signals presented to the processor board as an interrupt request.

IAK0/-IAK2/ : the coded responses to an interrupt request that indicates which requesting device is being serviced.

Processor Board Control Lines

These signals are used for general control and information within the Lisa.

RESET/ : a signal to the Lisa to return to its original on state.

LDMA/ : the signal to load the upper DMA address latch, which is located at D-1 on sheet 3 of the schematics. This signal

originates in the peripheral performing the DMA which needs to have the DMA upper address altered.

E: the enable signal for use with 68000-type peripheral devices.

VPA/ : an indication that a 68000-type peripheral is attached to the bus and has been addressed.

VMA/ : the response of the CPU to a VPA/ signal and notifies the peripheral that a valid address is present on the bus.

Slot Enable Lines

These lines decode the addresses of I/O slots that are not present on the processor board. They are presented to the bus as enable signals.

SL0/ -SL2/ : indicate that a slot low decode has been made for an I/O transfer to or from one of the three possible expansion boards. The signals originate in the decode logic at B-2 on sheet 5.

SH0/ -SH2/ : indicate the same for a high decode.

INTIO/ : indicates a decode of the processor board I/O space.

4.6.2 Memory Bus Interface

The memory bus is used to provide control signals to the memory boards installed in the Lisa and also to perform transfers of data between the memory matrix and the rest of the memory. The signals are located on the same common connector to the motherboard as the system bus interface.

The signals that compose the memory bus are described below.

A16-A20: address lines used for internal decoding within the memory matrix and between installed memory boards. Refer to Chapter 5 for details.

RA1-RA8: the multiplexed address lines used to address the dynamic RAM array in conjunction with the RAS/ and CAS/ timing signals.

MD0-MD15: the data lines across which a word of data is transferred to and from the memory array. They originate at A-4 to B-4 on sheet 3.

MREAD: the memory read signal that indicates the direction of transfer. It is generated from the coincidence of the CPUC1/ and READ terms at D-2 on sheet 5.

RAS/ and CAS/ : the row and column strobes that indicate the contents of the RA1-RA8 lines. They are generated at D-1 and C-1 on sheet 2.

HDER/ : indicates a hard memory error, which is an error found to be uncorrectable if any Error Correction Code (ECC) is present in the memory. It is received by B-2 on sheet 3.

SFER/ : indicates a soft memory error, which is an error in memory that could be corrected by any ECC present in the memory.

VA9B and VA10B : video address lines presented to the memory board for use in row refreshing.

R1 and R2 : signals that indicate which of the two possible memory boards is to be refreshed.

4.6.3 The Video Interface

The Video Interface also shares the main connector to the motherboard and consists of the signal group listed below.

HSYNC/ : the horizontal synchronization pulse used to indicate to the video circuit that the end of a line has been reached. It originates in the output of the video state machine and is shown at C-3 on sheet 5.

VSYNC/ : the vertical synchronization pulse used to indicate to the video board that the bottom of the screen has been reached. It originates in the video state machine at C-3

on sheet 5.

CSYNC/ : a composite of the above two signals and is used as an output to an external video monitor. It originates in the video state machine at C-3 on sheet 5.

VID : the data bit-stream output to the video board. It originates at C-3 on sheet 5.

4.7 Decode and Latches

This section includes the miscellaneous circuitry present on the processor board but not included in the preceding. It can be considered under the following headings:

- * I/O decode
- * Processor board control register
- * Memory error latch
- * Processor board status latch
- * Time delay logic.

4.7.1 I/O Decode

This is located at the extreme right of sheet 5 of schematic 050-4009. The first stage consists of the LS138 1-of-8 decode device at A-2. This is enabled when an I/O cycle is in process via the IOCY term and the JK flop at A-2. The A16/ term must be asserted.

The resulting decode of the A13-A15 terms results in the eight decodes for the ranges shown. All but the high-order decode are presented to the memory on the system bus as described in subsection 4.6.1 above. The final term is CPUIO/ , which is used to enable the processor board I/O decode performed by the LS139 decoder at B-2 on sheet 5.

The A11 and A12 terms are decoded to give the address block decodes as follows:

RBES/ (F800-FFFF), the Read Bus Error Status, which is used to gate the processor board status latch at B-2 on sheet 3 onto the data bus.

RMEA/ (F000-F7FF), the Read Memory Error Address signal, which gates the latched address at D-1 and D-2 on sheet 3 onto the

data bus.

VAL/ (E800-EFFF), the Video Address Latch signal, which is used to load the upper 6 bits of the video address (A15-A20) at B-2 on sheet 4.

SYSC/ (E000-E7FF), the Processor Board Control Register signal, which is used to load the LS259 latched decoder at D-2 on sheet 5. Refer to subsection 4.7.2.

Decode during special I/O is done by the other half of the LS139 at B-2. It is enabled by the SPIO/ term and decodes UA15 and UA16 to give the ROM/ or MMUIO/ signals. These respectively enable the boot ROM on sheet 3 and allow data in the MMU registers to be modified or read.

4.7.2 Processor Board Control Register

The processor board control register is shown at D-2 on sheet 5. It is used to hold control signals used internally on the board. It is loaded by the SYSC/ signal as described in the previous subsection. The signals latched have the following functions:

DIAG1/ and DIAG2/ : used to force a soft and a hard memory error respectively for diagnostic purposes. They do this when a write operation is performed to memory. This can be seen by the gating terms at D-2 on sheet 5.

SEG1 and SEG2: used by the software to select the context in the MMU in which the address translation takes place. They are input to the MMU RAM addressing logic at C-4 on sheet 4. Functional details are discussed in section 2.3.

START/ : used to disable the start mode. It is used when the program is to execute out of ROM after a power-on or reset. It enables access to the MMU RAM via the LS32 gate at B-4 on sheet 4.

SFMSK/ : used to suppress the detection of a soft memory error. It is applied to the LS279 Quad RS device at C-2 on sheet 3 to inhibit detection of the SFER/ signal.

VTMSK/ : used to suppress the vertical retrace interrupt to the CPU. It is input to the interrupt latch at B-2 on sheet 3.

HDMSK/ : similar to SFMSK/ above but suppresses the detection of a hard memory error. It is input to the latch at B-2 on sheet 3.

4.7.3 Memory Error Address Latch

When either a hard or a soft memory error occurs, the processor board makes the address at which the error occurred available to software.

The latch consists of two LS374 octal latches, shown at D-1 and D-2 on sheet 3. The address is updated each memory cycle by using the CAS signal from sheet 2 as the gating term to the LS11 gate at C-1, which provides the clock to the latches. The occurrence of either type of memory error prevents any updating by blocking CAS at this gate. Resetting the error latch permits normal operation again until the next error occurs.

Note that only the 15 high-order memory lines (A6-A20) are latched, because this defines a 64-byte block within memory, which is sufficient to locate the physical page of memory causing the error. Lisa software can map out faulty memory using the MMU in pages as small as 512 bytes.

The low-order bit in the latch is not a memory address bit. It indicates whether a CPU access or a video access was in progress when the error occurred.

For the case of a video error, only bits A15-A20 contain valid information. Bits A6-A14 are undefined.

4.7.4 Processor Board Status Latch

The processor board status latch is shown at B-1 on sheet 3. It consists of an LS279 quad RS flop and an LS244 octal driver. It is interrogated by the RBES/ signal, which originates in the I/O decode logic on sheet 5.

Four of the bits are latched by the LS279. These are:

SFER/ , Soft Memory Error, which indicates a recoverable error in memory. This can be inhibited or reset by means of the SFMSK/ signal, in the processor board control register at D-2 on sheet 5.

HDER/ , Hard Memory Error, which indicates an unrecoverable error in memory. This can be inhibited or reset by means of the HDMSK/ signal from the processor board control register at D-2 on sheet 5.

VTIR/ , Vertical Retrace Interrupt, which originates in the video state machine on sheet 5. It can be inhibited by means of the VTMSK/ signal from the control register on sheet 5.

BUST/ , Bus Timeout Error, which originates in the Time Delay Logic at D-4 on sheet 3. This is reset by reading the Memory Error Address latch, which generates the RMEA/ signal.

The other three bits available are not latched and all originate in the video control logic on sheet 3. They are:

INVID, Inverted video, which can be hand-wired to provide the inverse of the video data normally presented to the video board.

VID, Video Data, which is a direct sense of the current bit stream being presented as data to the video board.

CSYNC/ , Composite Synchronization pulse, which originates in the video state machine as a composite of horizontal and vertical retrace signals.

4.7.5 Time Delay Logic

The time delay logic is shown at D-4 on sheet 3 and serves two purposes:

- * Generation of Power-on Reset
- * Detection of Bus Time-out.

The logic consists of a 556 dual timer, with some associated circuitry.

The Power-on Reset (POR) signal is generated whenever the Reset Switch (RSTSW/) input from the system bus is pulsed low or at power-on. The POR signal is true for approximately 1 second.

The Bus Timeout (BUST/) signal is generated whenever a period of 30-300 microseconds elapses with the Address Strobe (AS/) signal occurring. This usually indicates that the CPU is awaiting a response from a peripheral which is either not present or is unable to respond.

CHAPTER 5. MEMORY BOARDS

The Lisa provides a flexible memory configuration. The physical memory space is divided into three spaces: main memory, I/O space, and special I/O space.

The main memory occupies 2 Mbytes of space and is further subdivided into two spaces of 1 Mbyte each, which correspond to each of the two memory boards that may be present in the Lisa. Each memory board is capable of sensing in which of the two slots it is presently located because one pin of the board socket is grounded on slot 2 and left open on slot 1. The lower memory board occupies slot 2 and the higher occupies slot 1.

In order to have memory that is contiguous, when each board can not necessarily have a full 1 Mbyte available on it, a scheme is implemented whereby both boards begin at their mutual boundary of $1000000@16$ and fill outward from this point to the capacity of the board.

To accommodate partially-stuffed boards and to maintain interchangeability between slots, the physical top row of the board in slot 2 (the lower board) must be the top of that board's address space. Conversely, the top row of the board in slot 1 (the upper board) must be the bottom of that board's address space.

The amount of memory in slot 2 determines the physical starting address of the memory available in the Lisa. Likewise, the amount of memory in slot 1 defines the physical ending address. Since the current memory boards are designed around 64 Kbit dynamic RAMs, the smallest possible increments are of 128 Kbytes each, or 64 Kwords of 16 bits each.

Because both the beginning and ending physical addresses are a function of the amount of memory present, the boot ROM must contain a routine that establishes the size and the location of the memory available in each particular Lisa. The routine must then configure the MMU RAM to place some part of the physical address at logical address zero.

Since the memory boards can be installed in any order or configuration, the operating system must add the required base address when modifying the MMU RAM contents for any reason.

Note that the Video Page Address latch contains a physical address, which must take the actual physical memory configuration into account.

5.1 Memory Block Diagram

Since each memory board is functionally identical, this section discusses the block diagram of a single board only. A memory board consists of:

- * An address decode section
- * The memory matrix itself, and
- * A parity detection and generation section.

The bulk of the memory control and timing signals are generated on the processor board and provided on the memory bus. Refer to section 4.6 for a discussion of how these signals are generated. Figure 5-1 shows the memory block diagram.

Figure 5-1. Memory Block Diagram

The matrix itself consists of four rows of eighteen 64 K by 1 bit dynamic RAM devices. The extra 2 bits are used as parity bits to check the integrity of data being read from the memory.

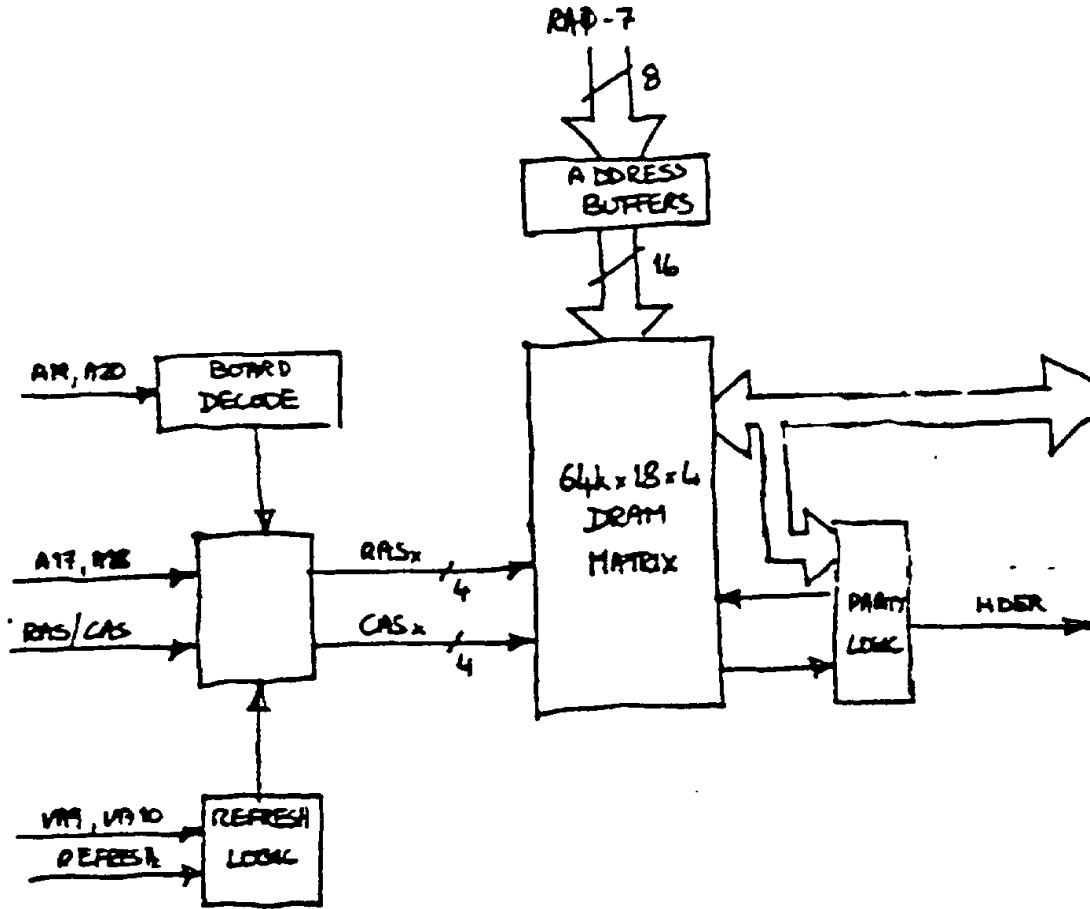


Figure 5-1. Memory Block Diagram

2b
5-8c

The parity logic both generates and checks the parity of data being written and read respectively. The decode logic is used to interpret the control signals to allow the correct RAS and CAS signals to select the proper row.

The latches and drivers are used to reduce loading on certain critical signal lines.

5.2 Row and Column Addressing

The three types of memory accesses are CPU, video, and DMA. The CPU and DMA accesses are identical, except for some timing differences due to inconsistencies in the DMA controller's reproduction of CPU signals. All accesses appear identical to the memory board. The address multiplexers on the processor board multiplex not only the CPU/DMA address with the video address, but also multiplex the matrix row address with the matrix column address in sync with the row and column address strobe signals.

5.2.1 Address Lines

The eight multiplexed address lines, RA1-RA8 at D-4 on sheet 1 of schematic 050-4010 in Appendix B, come from the processor board via the memory bus on P1. These are loaded into the dual S373 transparent latches at D-3 in duplicate form by the LTCH/ signal.

The LTCH/ signal originates in the JK flop at C-3, and is the DOTCK signal divided by two. It is active only when CAS/ is deasserted to ensure that the address for the RAMs is stable for a sufficient period.

The address lines to the matrix consist of the duplicated and latched RA1-RA8 signals, organized as upper and lower address lines to minimize signal loading and delay. These are shown at D-2 on sheet 1.

5.2.2 Slot Decode

The SLOT signal is shown at C-4 on sheet 1. Depending on the slot in which the board is located, this is pulled to GROUND in slot 2 (low-order board) or allowed to be pulled up to +5 V in slot 1 (high-order board).

SLOT is presented to the matrix decode logic and also to the pair of LS02 gates at C-3. The other leg of these gates is a decode of the A19 and A20 terms by the LS139 decoder at B-3.

As can be seen from the connection of the Y1 and Y2 outputs to the gates, a logic high will be output from the S32 gate at C-3 if either:

- * SLOT and A20 are low while A19 is high
- * SLOT and A20 are high while A19 is low.

This selects between the two boards using A19 and A20. The addressing system is shown schematically in Figure 5-2.

| board | signal | row | | |
|-------|--------|-----|------------|----------|
| B1 | CAS3 | E | 128 Kbytes | Upper 1M |
| B1 | CAS2 | D | 128 Kbytes | fills |
| B1 | CAS1 | C | 128 Kbytes | (SLOT 1) |
| B1 | CAS0 | B | 128 Kbytes | upward |
| B2 | CAS0 | B | 128 Kbytes | Lower 1M |
| B2 | CAS1 | C | 128 Kbytes | fills |
| B2 | CAS2 | D | 128 Kbytes | (SLOT 2) |
| B2 | CAS3 | E | 128 Kbytes | downward |

Figure 5-2. Memory Address Decoding

Note that the output signal from this section is used to gate only the CAS signal to the matrix. This is because no change is made to the contents of RAM when a RAS-only cycle is performed.

5.2.3 Matrix Device Decode

The A17 and A18 signals from the memory bus are presented to the S138 3-to-8 decoder at B-3. The third input is the SLOT signal from the previous subsection. This results in two groups of four outputs, the high-order four for the high-order board slot and the low-order four for the low-order board slot.

These signals are presented to the two rows of gates that follow, to allow memory to be physically located next to the 100000@16 boundary discussed in the introduction to this chapter.

Note that the RAS0/ output to the matrix on sheet 1 is a product of the Y4 decode output if SLOT is high, but a product of the Y3 output if SLOT is zero. That means that it corresponds to the high-order block of the matrix in the low-order slot, but the low-order block in the high-order slot. Examination of all the other matrix strobe signals will reveal a similar pattern.

5.2.4 Matrix Address Strobes

The RAS/ signal from the processor board enters the memory board from the memory bus at A-4. It is used to gate whichever of the inputs to the four S00s at A-2 has been enabled by the matrix decode logic, described in the preceding subsection.

$(\text{SLOT}/!.A20/!.A19) \rightarrow \text{SLOT } 2$

$(\text{SLOT}!.A20!.A19/) \rightarrow \text{SLOT } 1 \text{ (high order)}$

$(A17/!.A18/!.CAS/!.SLOT) + (A17!.A18!.CAS/!.SLOT/) \rightarrow \text{CAS}0/$

$(A17!.A18/!.CAS/!.SLOT) + (A17/!.A18!.CAS/!.SLOT/) \rightarrow \text{CAS}1/$

$(A17/!.A18!.CAS/!.SLOT) + (A17!.A18/!.CAS/!.SLOT/) \rightarrow \text{CAS}2/$

$(A17!.A18!.CAS/!.SLOT) + (A17/!.A18/!.CAS/!.SLOT/) \rightarrow \text{CAS}3/$

This scheme permits the memory space to be filled from the 1 Mbyte midpoint in both directions. This eliminates gaps in the physical address space when the full 2 Mbytes of memory are not installed.

The third input leg is to the S10 gates at A-3 which drives the S00's derives from the decode of VA9 and VA10 from the LS139 2-to-4 decoder at A-3. This is enabled by the Refresh (RFSH/) signal. Since the video address register increments sequentially, it is used to provide refresh.

The CAS/ signal from the processor board enters the memory board at C-4 on sheet 1 and gates the

selected CASx signal, provided that the LS00 gates at B-3 are enabled.

Only one CASx/ will be active during any one access. During a CPU or DMA access, only one RASx/ per board will be active, but in a video access, a second RASx/ will be active to perform matrix refresh.

5.3 Data and Parity

The logic concerned with data transfer and parity is located on sheet 2 of schematic 050-4010. Parity is stored in odd form for each byte in the memory matrix and generates a hard memory error if read as an even parity. Currently, there is no error correction circuitry implemented in the Lisa memory. As a consequence, soft memory errors are not corrected by the memory board.

5.3.1 Memory Data Lines

The bidirectional data lines on the memory bus MD0-MD15 are connected directly to the DxIN inputs of the matrix.

They are also connected to two LS280 parity generator/checkers at C-3 and A-3, which generate the odd parity for each of the upper and lower bytes being written into memory. The EVEN outputs are written into the corresponding bit in the matrix, resulting in an 18-bit word being used to store the two bytes, each with odd parity.

Data read from the matrix appear at the DxOUT outputs, and are passed into the two LS373 transparent octal latches shown at A-2 and C-2. The data are latched on the trailing edge of the main RAS signal.

At the same time, the corresponding two parity bits are latched into the LS375 shown at C-4 and A-4. These are then gated with the MREAD signal to ensure that the ninth bit is in fact stable during a write operation before being presented to the parity generator/checkers to establish if parity is good for both bytes being read.

Output data are enabled onto the MD0-MD15 lines of the data bus by the S03 AND gate output at C-3. This term is asserted if both MREAD and LBDSL are asserted. The LBDSL originates at C-3 on sheet 1.

It shows that the board has been selected clocked on the trailing edge of RAS.

A single byte can be written to or read from memory under control of the LDS/ and UDS/ bus signals at C-4 and A-4 respectively. The other half of the memory word is read from memory, but is not passed through the LS373.

5.3.2 Memory Parity

Odd, byte-wide parity is generated and tested in the Lisa memory by means of two LS280 devices. Each data byte has its own device associated with it. The lower byte generates the PIL bit at C-2, while the upper byte generates the PIU at A-2.

When a word is read from memory, the corresponding two parity bytes are read and latched while the parity is checked. For a word access, if either byte results in an even parity, the JK flop at B-3 is set. This results in a HDER/ signal being presented to the processor board to denote a memory error. For a byte access, parity is checked only for the byte being accessed. The parity of the other byte is ignored.

The HDER/ signal is also fed back into the parity logic for use in parity diagnostics. Note that it is also latched until a write operation is performed to clear this.

If a parity error occurs during video access to memory, it is reported to the CPU 60 times per second until the parity is remasked or the word causing the error is rewritten. This is true even if the CPU itself never accesses the memory location causing the parity error.

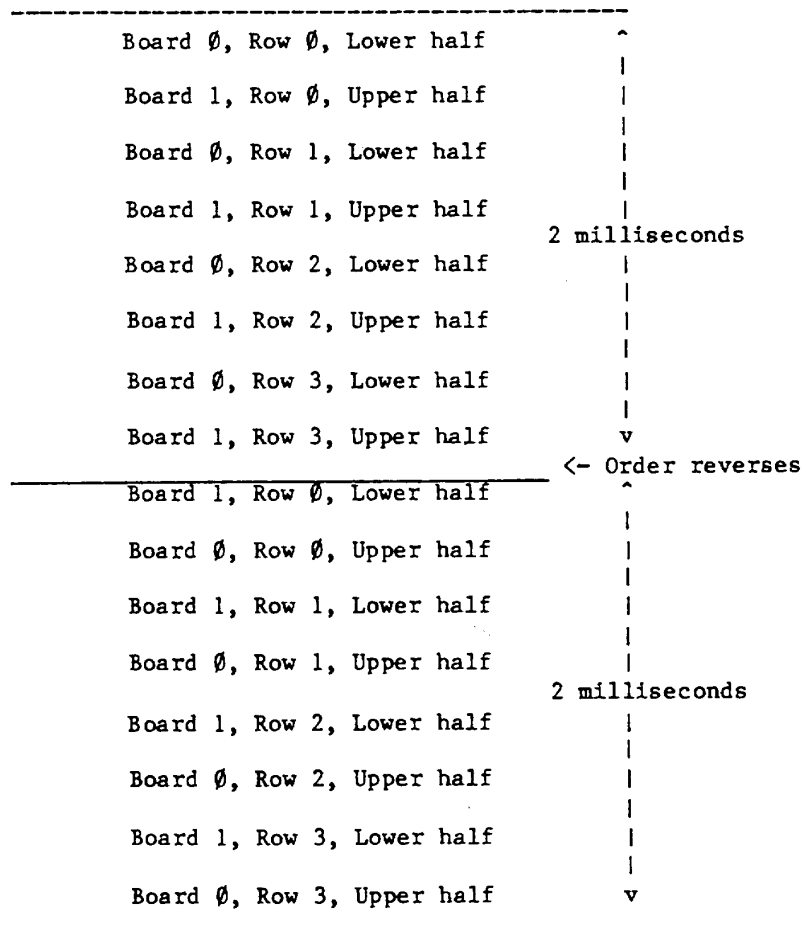
5.3.3 Memory Refresh

Refresh cycles occur during a video access by selecting multiple rows of memory devices on the board. Since the video addresses cycle through all device-row addresses every 128 accesses, this feature is used in place of a separate hardware refresh address generator.

The upper and lower halves of 64 Kbit RAM devices are selected by the polarity of the RAS input at RAS time. RAM devices that require refresh every 128 cycles have their upper and lower halves refreshed

simultaneously and therefore require only 2 milliseconds for full refresh. RAM devices that require refresh every 256 cycles need the full 4 milliseconds refresh cycle time for full refresh.

Refresh alternates between installed memory boards every 128 cycles. The order of alternation is reversed after every refresh pass in order to supply the correct refresh to 256-cycle refresh RAMs, should these be installed. This is done by means of the VA8 and VA11 signals from the processor board and results in the pattern shown in Figure 5-3.



Pattern repeats from the top

Figure 5-3. Memory Refresh Pattern

5.4 Memory Timing

As with most systems, the timing associated with memory access is one of the critical constraints around which the computer has been designed. The timing diagram for the memory board is shown in Figure 5-4.

Figure 5-4. Memory Timing Diagram

5.4.1 Row Selection Timing

The most critical timing in the memory involves the decode of the A17 and A18 address lines. Both these lines are the product of the address translation within the MMU on the processor board, and consequently reach the memory board with some delay

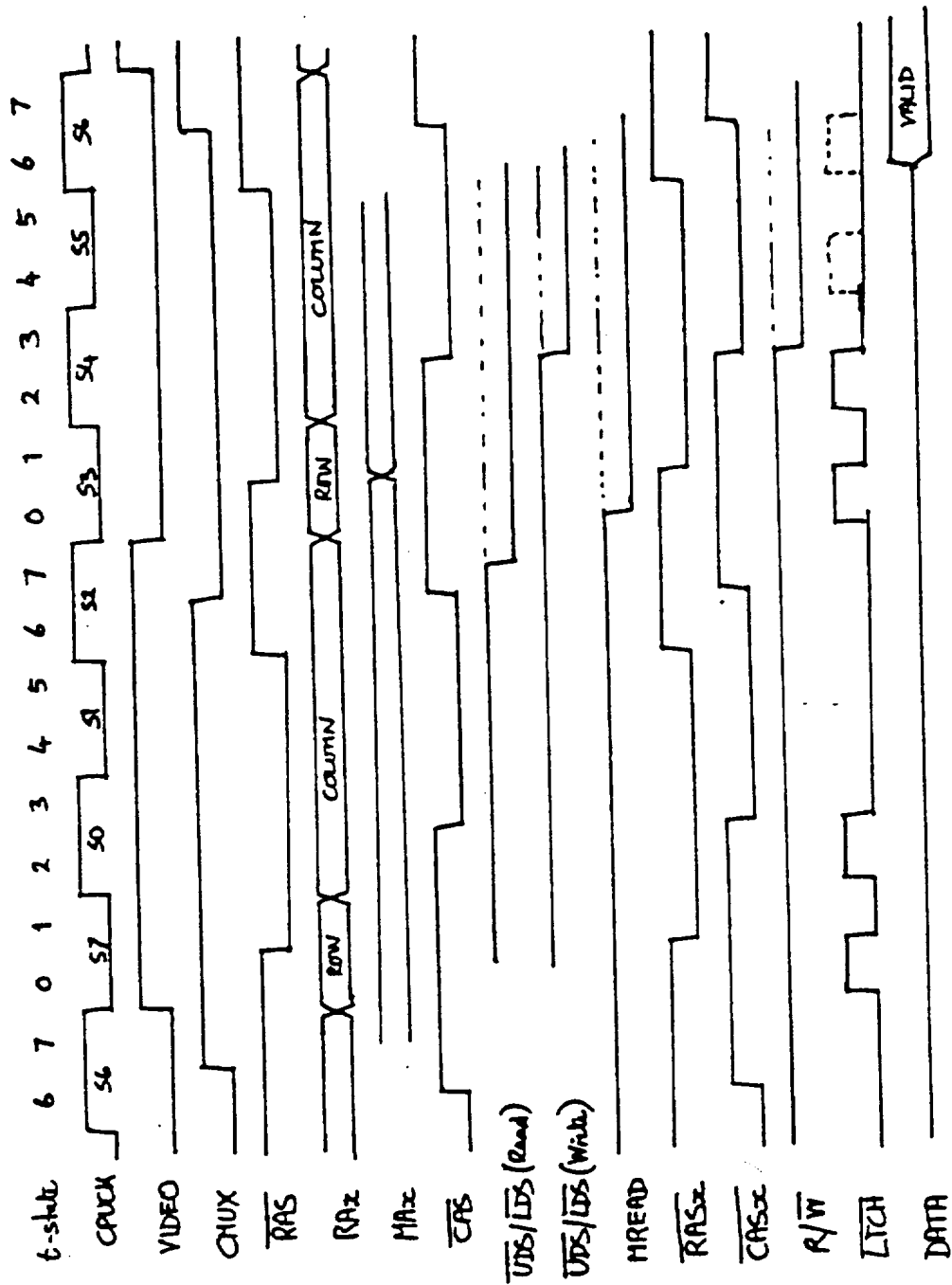


Figure 5-4. LISA Memory Timing Diagram

9b
5-10e

after the AS/ signal that begins the cycle. Since these signals are also used to generate the correct RASx/ signal within the matrix, it might not be possible to select the board before RAS time.

The difficulty is solved by generating RAS on both boards in any case and using the CAS signal to define which part of the matrix is in fact being accessed. This is shown in Figure 5-5.

Figure 5-5. Memory Row Address Timing

5.4.2 Address Multiplex Timing

In order for the correct word in memory to be accessed, the address is presented to the matrix in two halves. This is also shown in Figure 5-5.

The two halves correspond to the row address and the column address of the word being accessed. The processor board makes each of these available in turn on the RA1-RA8 lines. It uses the RAS/ or CAS/ signals to strobe the address.

The multiplexed address is latched into the S373s with the LTCH/ term. This has the waveform shown in Figures 5-4 and 5-6. The flop generating it toggles at the frequency of DOTCK whenever the CAS/ term is deasserted. Otherwise, it remains asserted.

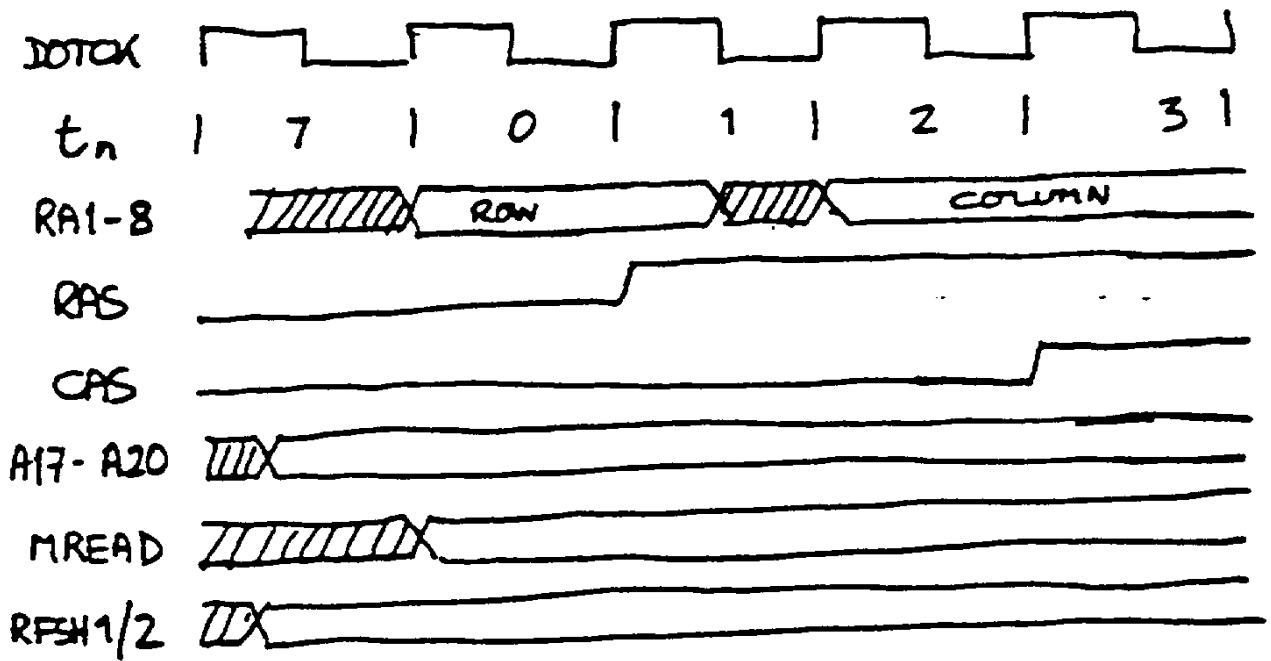


Figure 5-5. Memory Row Address Timing

5-10b

5.4.3 Data and Parity Timing

The constraints on the data and parity signals of the matrix are less rigorous than those for the address selection. The timing is shown in Figure 5-6.

Figure 5-6. Memory Data and Parity Timing

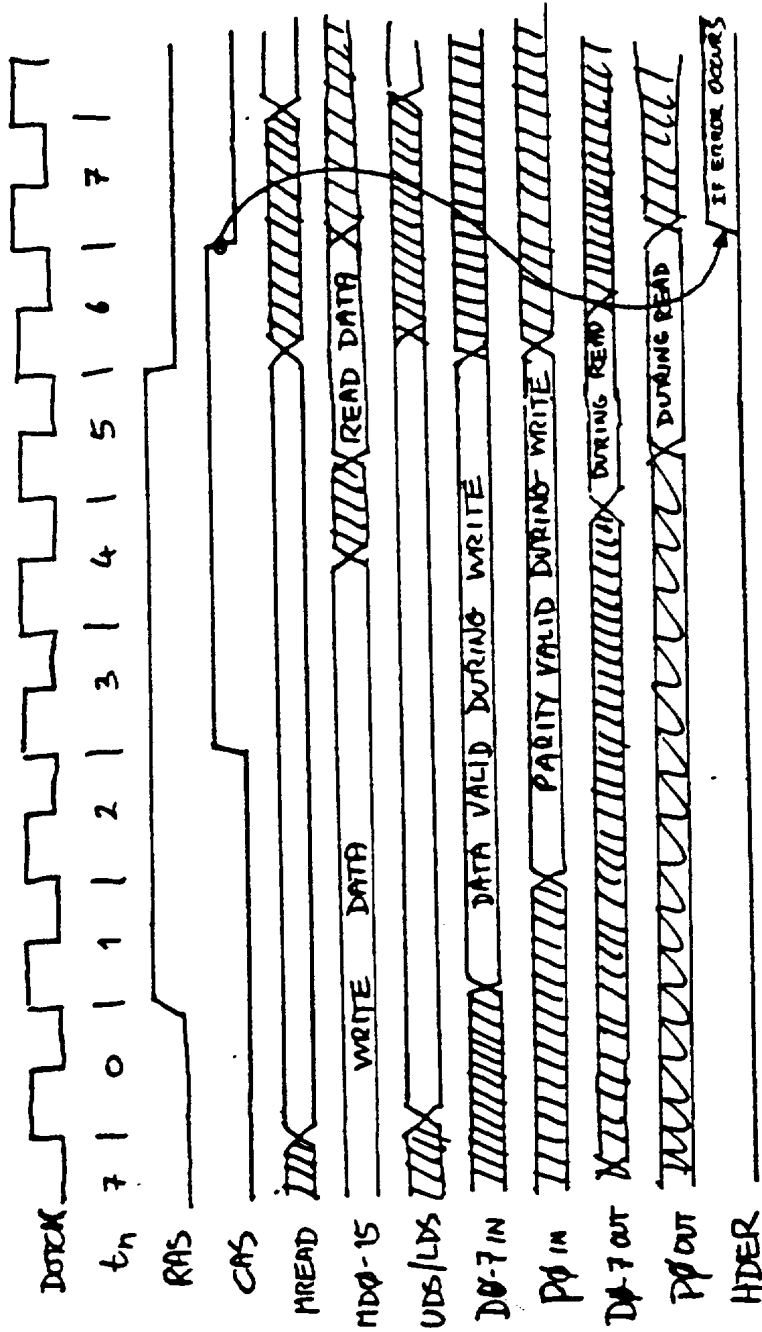


Figure 5-6. Memory Data and Parity Timing

11b
5-13e

CHAPTER 6. THE I/O BOARD

The Lisa communicates with its peripherals principally through the I/O board, which contains the peripheral controllers for the external interface connectors of the Lisa. The I/O board must be present in any Lisa.

6.1 I/O Board Block Diagram

The main features on the I/O board are shown in Figure 6-1 and can be itemized as follows:

- * Floppy-disk controller
- * Two serial I/O port interfaces
- * A parallel port interface
- * Keyboard/Mouse interface
- * Miscellaneous logic.

The data bus on the I/O board consists of three separate sections, which are also shown in Figure 6-1. These are the:

- * System-bus data lines from off-board,
- * Disk bus, internal to the floppy-disk controller,
- * D-bus connecting to all other peripherals.

Note that some control functions are grouped together on the same interface device. This is done both for convenience and to minimize hardware.

Figure 6-1. I/O Board Block Diagram

6.2 Floppy-Disk Controller

The floppy-disk controller is designed around a 6504A processor and its associated memory and logic. Figure 6-2 shows a block diagram of the floppy-disk controller. Operation of the controller is described in section 6.3; The logic schematic can be found on sheet 4 of schematic 050-4008 in Appendix C.

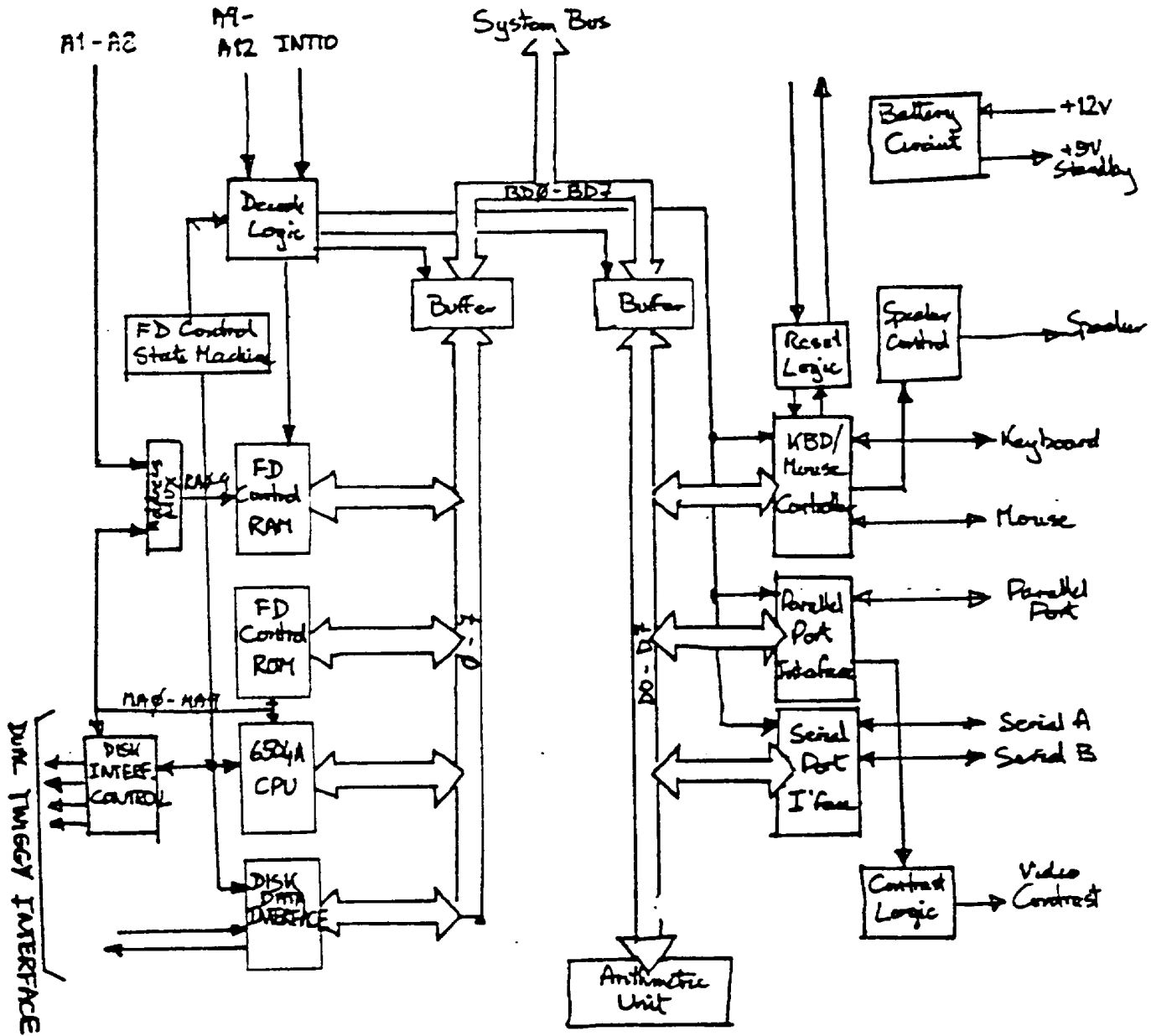


Figure 6-1. I/O Board Block Diagram

6-2b

Figure 6-2. Floppy-Disk Controller Block Diagram

The controller communicates with the Lisa through an area in its dedicated memory. The CPU places commands and data to be written on the disk at locations in this RAM. The CPU can also access status information and data read from the disk that is placed in the RAM by the processor.

Timing for the controller is generated asynchronously to the 68000 by a clock generator internal to the controller. This provides clocking to the processor and to control latches.

The control lines to the two floppy-disk drives are generated by addressable latches that are loaded by

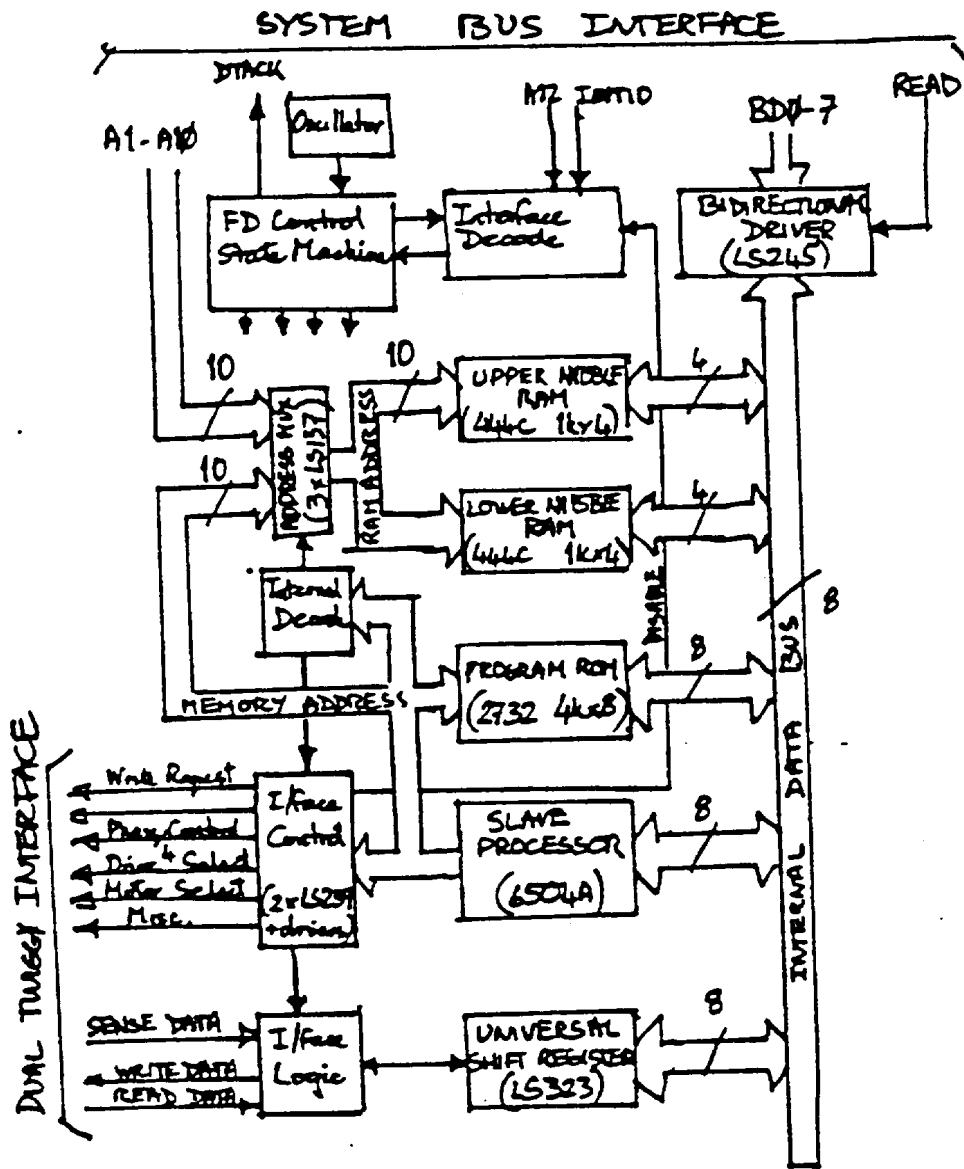


Figure 6-2. Floppy Disk Controller Block Diagram

3b
6-42

slave processor operation. The data interface to the drives is controlled by a state machine, which is used to monitor and control this interface under control of the 6504A.

6.2.1 Processor and Memory

The heart of the controller is a 6504A 8-bit processor at D-3, which accesses two types of memory. A 4 K by 8 program ROM at D-3 contains the processor control routines with which it performs manipulation of the interface to the two floppy-disk drives and also transfer of data to and from the main processor.

Data being transferred is stored in the two parallel 1 K by 4 RAM devices at D-3 and D-4. These provide a 1 Kbyte buffer space, common to both the 6504A and the main processor, for use as a data buffer. The RAM is also used for storing command strings from the processor to the controller and for status information from the disk. The RAM is functionally divided as shown in Figure 6-3.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Figure 6-3. Floppy-Disk Controller Address Space

The bidirectional LS245 octal buffer at D-4 divides the internal floppy-disk controller data bus from the system bus data lines BD0-BD7. The internal bus connects to the 2732 PROM, the 6504A processor, and the upper and lower nibbles are connected to one 444C RAM each. In addition, the bus connects to the LS323 universal shift register at D-2.

The 8 Kbyte address space of the processor is addressed by means of the internal address bus MA0-MA12. These connect directly to the program ROM and are multiplexed with system bus address lines for accesses to the buffer RAM.

| | |
|------|---|
| 0000 | I/OB (Input/Output Control Block) (see Figure 6-8) |
| 0010 | R/W Shared RAM (Initialized by the 6504) |
| 0020 | 6504 Status Block (Read-only for the 68000) |
| 0030 | Internal I/OB (Used only by the 6504) |
| 0040 | 6504 Internal Variables (Global and Local) |
| 00C0 | LISA Parameter Storage (Used only by the 68000) |
| 0100 | 6504 Stack (Used in this order) ↑ |
| 0180 | 6504 General Storage Area |
| 01F4 | I/O Buffer |
| 05FF | (524 bytes) |

Figure 6-3. Floppy Disk Controller Address Space

6-5b

The internal memory bus is also used to select the control lines to be manipulated on the disk interface via the LS259 selectable latches at B-1 and C-2. It provides internal decodes using the LS139 dual 2-to-4 decoder shown at B-2 and B-3.

6.2.2 System Bus Interface

The interface to the system bus consists of the devices shown on the left side of sheet 4 of the schematic, that is, the bidirectional data bus transceiver at D-4, the three LS157 2-to-1 Multiplexer devices at C-4 to A-4, and some control circuitry at A-3 and A-4.

The processor is capable of locking out any communication on the main bus by means of the DIS signal. This is done because many routines within the disk controller are time-critical. Accesses from the 68000 would render them impossible.

DIS is one of the inputs to the LS32 gates at A-3. When this signal is asserted, the J input of the JK flop at A-3 is always asserted. This means that the output is always true, and that the second JK flop at A-3 is always set, giving an output at pin 6 which is always asserted. This forces the S input on the LS157 Multiplexer to select the MAX inputs at all times and disables the bus transceiver at D-4.

The Q/ output of the second LS109 flop at A-3 is gated into another LS109 JK flop at A-2. This generates the DTACK/ signal on the system bus only if the Q/ output from A-3 is high. This can happen only when DIS is deasserted.

Thus any attempt to communicate with the controller while DIS is high does not result in a DTACK/ acknowledgement signal. The access cycle hangs, waiting for this signal until the bus timeout on the processor board triggers and the BERR/ signal is generated. Refer to section 4.7 for a discussion of this.

Note that the DTACK/ signal is generated by an LS367 tristate driver device, which is enabled only when the Flop at A-3 Q output is low.

6.2.3 Timing Generation

The floppy-disk controller runs asynchronously to the Lisa. Its timing is controlled by logic built

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

around an LS161A 4-bit counter.

Timing is provided by a 16 MHz oscillator, located at B-3 on sheet 4 of schematic 050-4008. The output is buffered by the Schmitt trigger NAND gates before being presented to the LS161A counter at B-3. Pin 5 of device U6A may be used to provide an alternative clock input if pin 1 is pulled to ground to disable the normal clock.

The timing state sequence that the counter passes through is dependent on whether the controller is communicating with the processor or performing internal control functions with the processor locked out. The state machine goes through eight states in the former case and nine in the latter. Refer to Figure 6-4 for an overview of the states that are passed through.

Figure 6-4. Floppy-Disk Counter Timing States

If the controller is communicating with the processor, the DIS signal is deasserted. This means that the LS109 JK flop at A-3 is in the reset condition, resulting in a low condition on the P0 input to the LS161A at B-2.

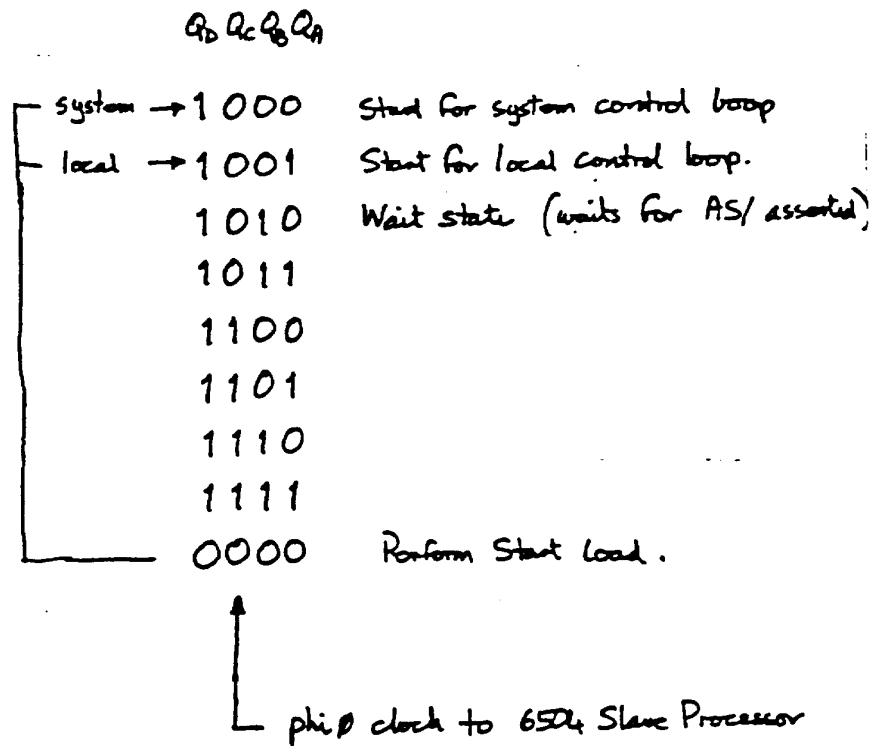


Figure 6-4. FD Counter Timing States

6-7B

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

When the counter rolls over to zero, the Q3 output goes low and causes the P-inputs to be loaded. In this case, an 8 is loaded, since the P3 input is pulled high and all other inputs are low. At this point, the Q1 output is low, which results in the CEP input being asserted. Since the CET input is pulled high, the counter is enabled and begins to count.

The clock input is running and the machine will clock up from state 8 to 9. This causes the Q0 output to go high and to sample whether the CPU is attempting to access the controller by clocking the lower LS109 JK flop at A-3. The Q output becomes deasserted in this case, which enables the DTACK driver at A-2. It is also presented to the upper flop at A-3, which acts as the internal mode selector and uses the 6504A's phi2 clock to present a high to pin 4 of the LS00 at A-2.

When the counter clocks from 9 to 10, the Q1 output goes high, which presents a low input to the j input of the LS109 JK flop at A-2. This in turn asserts the DTACK/ signal to the processor to initiate the I/O data transfer cycle. This also deasserts the CEP input to the counter, which means that the counter and thus the entire controller hangs waiting for the processor to respond.

Processor response is detected by the AS signal. When this is deasserted, the upper flop at A-3 is preset, which drives the CEP to its asserted state again. The AS also presets the lower flop, which disables the DTACK/ signal. The counter then proceeds in sequence through states 11 to 15 before rolling over and beginning the sequence again.

In the case where the processor is not attempting to access the controller, the lower flop at A-3 is set. This causes the counter to begin in state 9, since the P0 input is high when the PE load signal is asserted.

The Q0 output is solely used to clock the disable flop at A-3. Due to the asynchronous nature of this clocking with the interface, the second flop at B-3 has been added to give a stable period to the state.

The Q1 output performs two functions. First, it is used as a clock to drive the disk state machine at D-1 and D-2. Second, it is used as a gating term for the DTACK flop at A-2, which also halts the counter to wait for processor response.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

The Q2 output is only used to provide the input clock to the processor at C-2. This defines the period of the phi2 clock output by the processor.

The Q3 output is used exclusively to reset the counter to its initial count state.

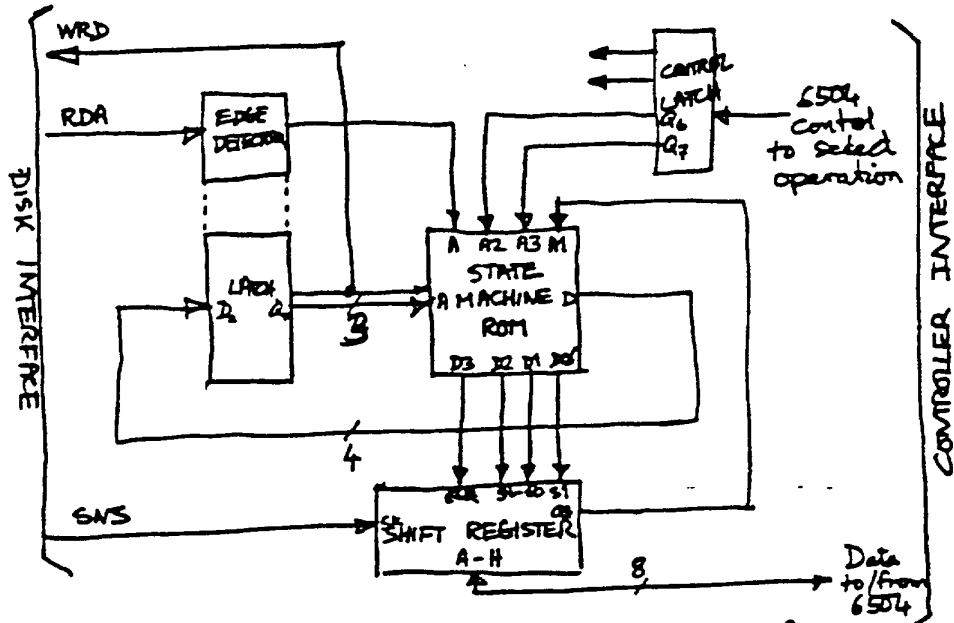
The phi2 clock from the 6502A is used to clock the upper flop at A-2 and also to provide timing for loading the control latches at B-1 and C-2.

6.2.4 Disk State Machine

The interface to the drive itself includes a state machine whose purpose it is to perform the data parallel/serial translation during transfer to and from the drive.

The state machine consists of three devices, as shown in Figure 6-5. The central device is a 256-by 8-bit ROM at D-2, which works in conjunction with the hex D-Flop LS174 at D-1 and the 74LS323 8-bit universal shift register at D-2.

September 7th 1984



| CLR | SI | SD | Operation | Used to perform |
|-----|----|----|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Hold | Present data to controller |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | Shift Left | Receive data from disk |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | Shift right | Present data to disk |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | Load. | Receive data from controller |
| 0 | x | x | Clear. | |

Q_A holds MSB. When it is a "1", the byte is assembled.

Figure 6-5. Disk State Machine

9b
6-11e

~~Figure 6-5. Disk State Machine~~

The processor uses two outputs of the LS259 to select one of four operations within the state machine. In addition, data are made available on the internal controller data bus for parallel loading into the shift register.

The state machine is clocked by the Q2 output of the timing counter described in subsection 6.2.3 above.

The interface signals that connect to this section of the logic are as follows:

RDA is input from the drive and is the Read Data line containing serial data from the selected head and drive.

WRD is output to the drive and is the Write Data line for the serial data written by the selected drive and head.

SNS is input from the drive and is the sense line that presents the selected status information on the floppy-disk drive system.

6.2.5 Stepper Motor Control

The control of the stepper motor in the drives is performed with the LS259 8-bit addressable latch at C-2. The various bits are selected by means of the low-order internal controller address lines.

These are passed through line drivers to provide the following signals. Note that the first two signals do not actually control stepper movement. The signals are:

WRQ/ is the Write Request line, which is output to the drive to permit write operations to be performed.

HDS is the Head Select line, which is output to the drive to indicate which of the two heads on the selected drive is to be used to write or read data. It also is used to select which status data are to be read on the sense line.

phi0-phi3 are the four phase control lines output to the drive to control the carriage

motion performed by the stepper motor. In addition, the ϕ signal is used in the selection of status data read on the sense line.

The first two signals are placed here only for convenience. The motor phase control line operation is described in subsection 6.3.5

6.2.6 General Drive Control

The function of the general drive control logic is to manipulate lines on the drive interface. This is performed by the LS259 8-bit addressable latch at B-1 with some additional logic.

The latched bits are addressed by the low-order four lines on the internal controller address bus.

Two bits are used to provide information to the CPU:

FDIR is the Floppy-Disk Interrupt Request. It is fed into the inverting driver shown at B-4 on sheet 3 where it generates the IOIR/ interrupt request to the processor. It is also presented to the PB4 inputs of the keyboard interface device for polling by the CPU.

DSKDIAG is the Disk Diagnostic line that is presented to the PB7 input of the parallel port interface device for polling by the CPU to indicate that the controller is performing disk diagnostics.

One bit is used for internal control on the I/O board:

Disable (DIS) is the control signal that the 6504A uses to inhibit the interface to the 68000 when it is the process of an operation which must not be interrupted.

Four bits are used as control signals to the disk drives:

MT0/ & MT1/ are the motor control lines, which output to the two individual disk drives to control the spindle rotation

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

speed.

DR0/ & DR1/ are the drive select lines, which select between the two drives in the dual drive assembly.

6.3 Floppy-Disk Controller Operation

The floppy-disk controller manipulates the control lines to the drives to read data from and write data to all tracks and surfaces of the disk drive. It communicates with the CPU by means of a common RAM space on the I/O board, shown in Figure 6-3.

The CPU requests the floppy-disk controller to perform operations by means of commands placed in the GOBYTE in location 0000@2, plus other parameters within the I/O block as required. The 6504 command structure is shown in Figures 6-6a through 6-6r.

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

| Issued | | Returned | | HANDSHAKE | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 80 | handshake, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 00 | | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry - | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsip1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsip1 | 00..02 01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..02 01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPS PB=4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB=6 | FCC901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high
gobyte zeroed

Post issue memory access: no special requirements
gobyte zeroed on handshake

| * tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
|------------------|----------------|
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-18 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6a. (FD) Controller Handshake Command

Floppy - Disk [all fig.]

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

| Issued | | Returned | READ | | |
|---------------|--------|----------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| 0504 | 5800 | | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT |
| 0000 | FCC001 | | gobyte | 81 | RWTS, zeroed |
| 0001 | FCC003 | | function | 00 | read |
| 0002 | FCC005 | | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top |
| 0003 | FCC007 | | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top |
| 0004 | FCC009 | | sector | 00..15 | see below* |
| 0005 | FCC00B | | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer |
| 0006 | FCC00D | | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast |
| 0007 | FCC00F | | confirm | FF | format confirmation |
| 0008 | FCC011 | | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error |
| 0009 | FCC013 | | disk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac |
| 002C | FCC059 | | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | | dat bits/p1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | | dat bits/p2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005D | FCC0BB | | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005E | FCC0BD | | adr bits/p1 | 00..0E 01 | 00 = no error |
| 005F | FCC0BF | | adr bits/p2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | | wrong trk | 00..0E 01 | 00 = no error |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 007E | FCC0FD | | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| 007F | FCC0FF | | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| 0080 | FCC101 | | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | | error trk # | 00..max track | error only |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | | error side # | 00, 01 | error only |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | | buf begin | R/W data | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | | buf end | R/W data | |
| COPS PB=4 | FCDD81 | | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending |
| Parallel PB=6 | FCG901 | | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy |

FCD

Pre issue requirements:
 DSKDIAG high
 drive enabled
 gobyte zeroed
 no interrupts pending

Post issue memory access:
 none until FDIR

| * | |
|----------------|----------------|
| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-18 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6b. FD Controller Read Command

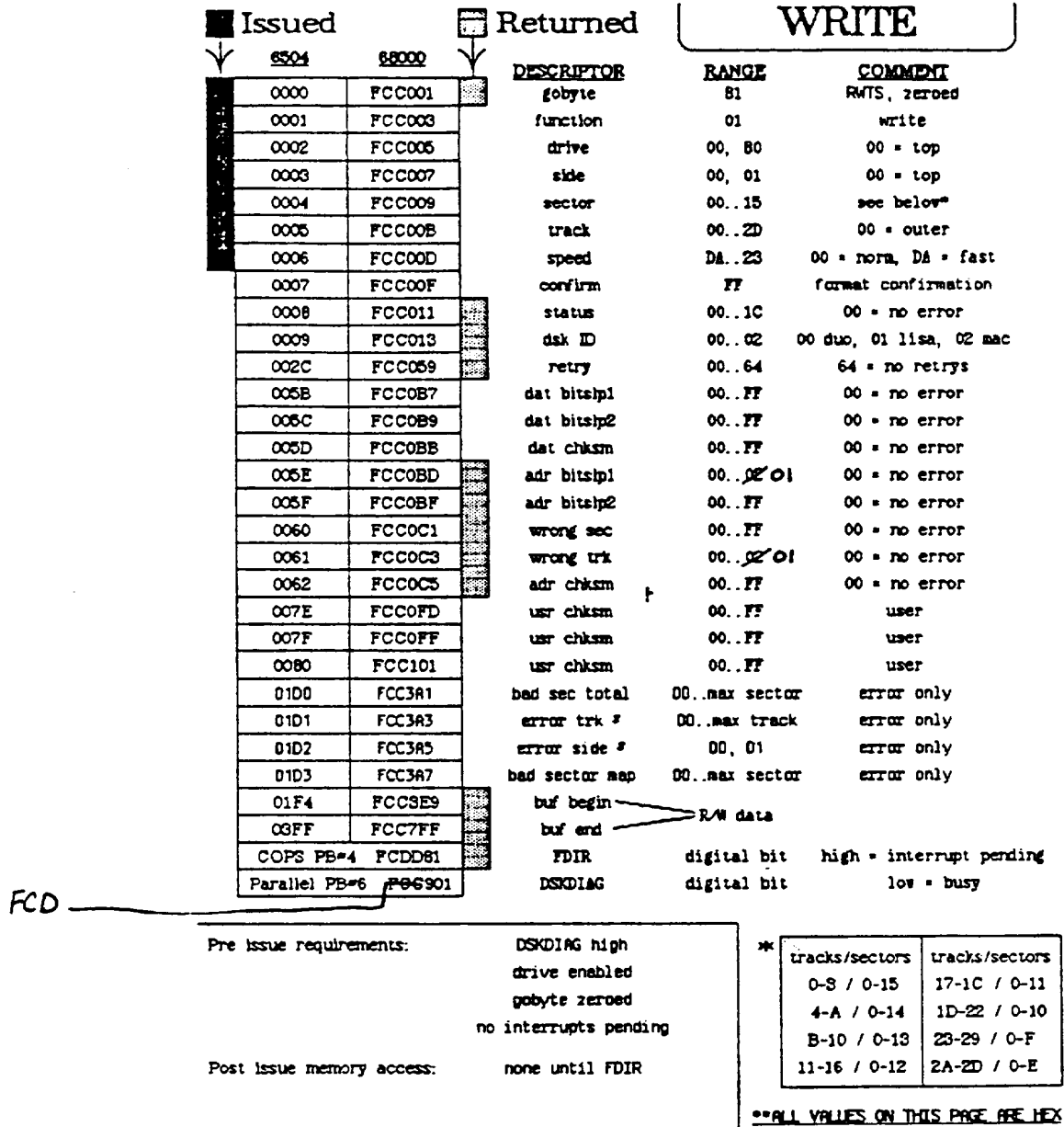


Figure 6-6c. FD Controller Write Command

| Issued | | Returned | | UNCLAMP | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|----------|
| 8504 | 8800 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 81 | RWTS, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 02 | unclamp | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 dup, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsip1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsip1 | 00..01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | R/W data |
| COPS PB#4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FE901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high
drive enabled
gobyte zeroed
no interrupts pending

Post issue memory access: none until FDIR

| * | |
|----------------|----------------|
| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-13 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6d. FD Controller Unclamp Command

| Issued | | Returned | | FORMAT | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 81 | RMTS, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 03 | format | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | beginning track # | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitslp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitslp1 | 00..02 01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..02 01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | R/W data | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPS PB#4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FC901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: drive enabled
 DSKDIAG high
 gobyte zeroed
 no interrupts pending

Post issue memory access: none until FDIR

| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
|----------------|----------------|
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-18 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6e. FD Controller Format Command

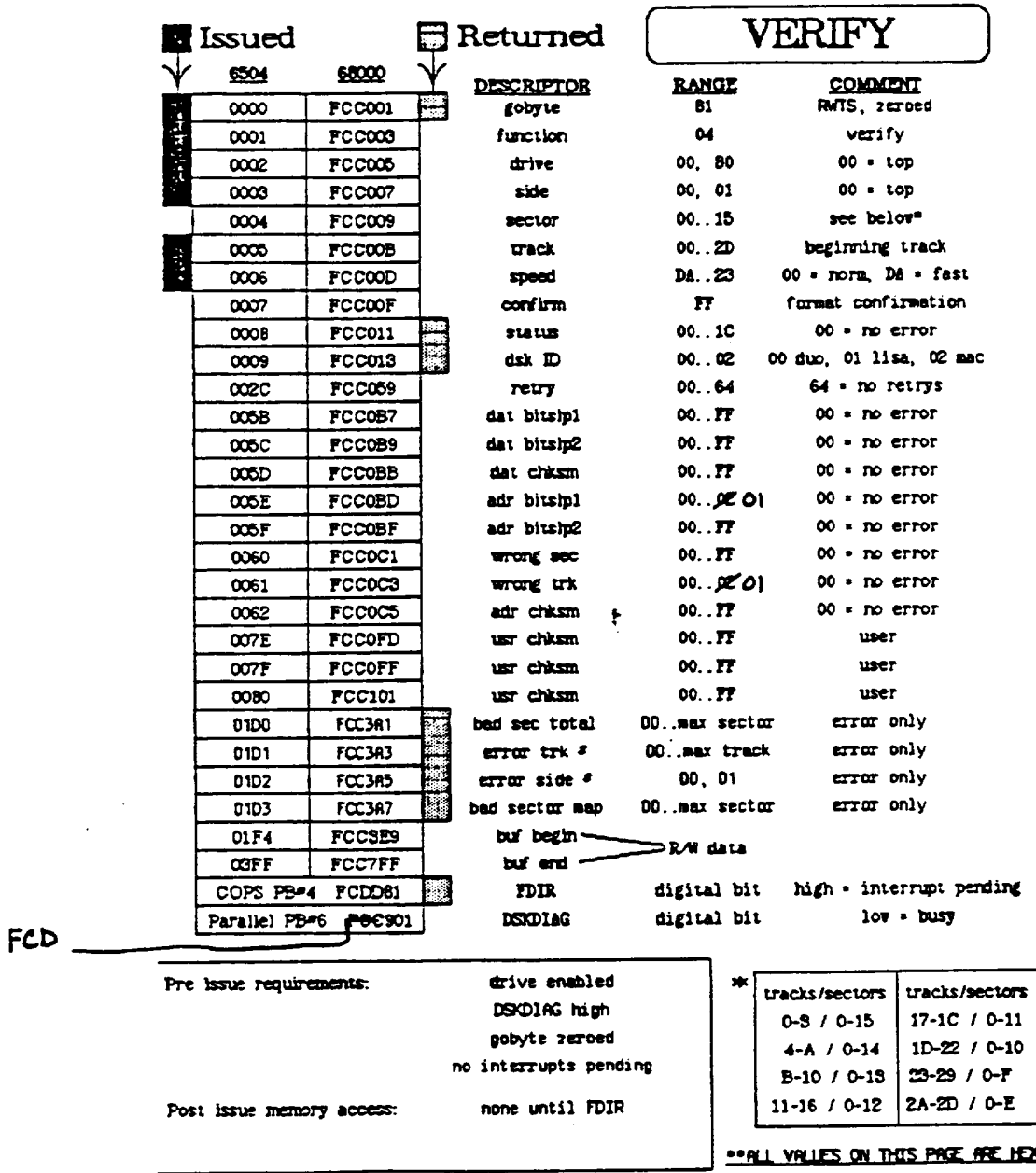


Figure 6-6f. FD Controller Verify Command

| Issued | | Returned | | FORMAT TRACK | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 81 | RWTS, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 05 | format track | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsp1 | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPS PB#4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FC6901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

R/W data

FCD

Pre Issue requirements: drive enabled
DSKDIAG high
gobyte zeroed
no interrupts pending

Post Issue memory access: none until FDIR

| * tracks/sectors | |
|------------------|--------------|
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-13 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6g. FD Controller Format Track Command

| Issued | | Returned | | VERIFY TRACK | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 81 | RWTS, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 06 | verify track | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | D4..23 | 00 = norm, D4 = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | disk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsp1 | 00..0C01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0C01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPS PB=4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB=6 | #0C901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

RAW data

FCD

| | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Pre issue requirements: | drive enabled | |
| | DSKDIAG high | |
| | gobyte zeroed | |
| | no interrupts pending | |
| Post issue memory access: | none until FDIR | |

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| * tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| 0-S / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-15 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6h. FD Controller Verify Track Command

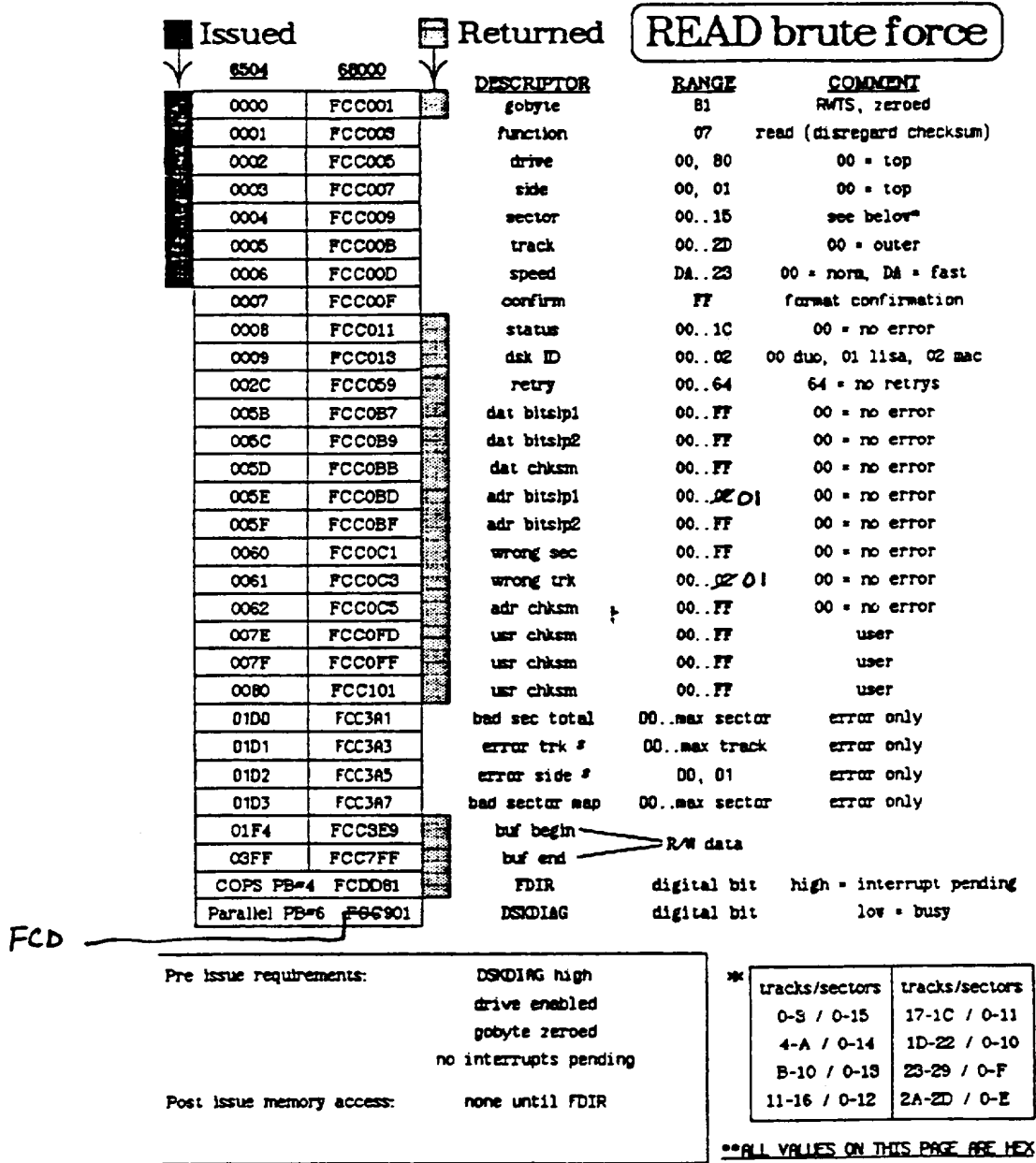


Figure 6-6i. FD Controller Read Brute Force Command

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

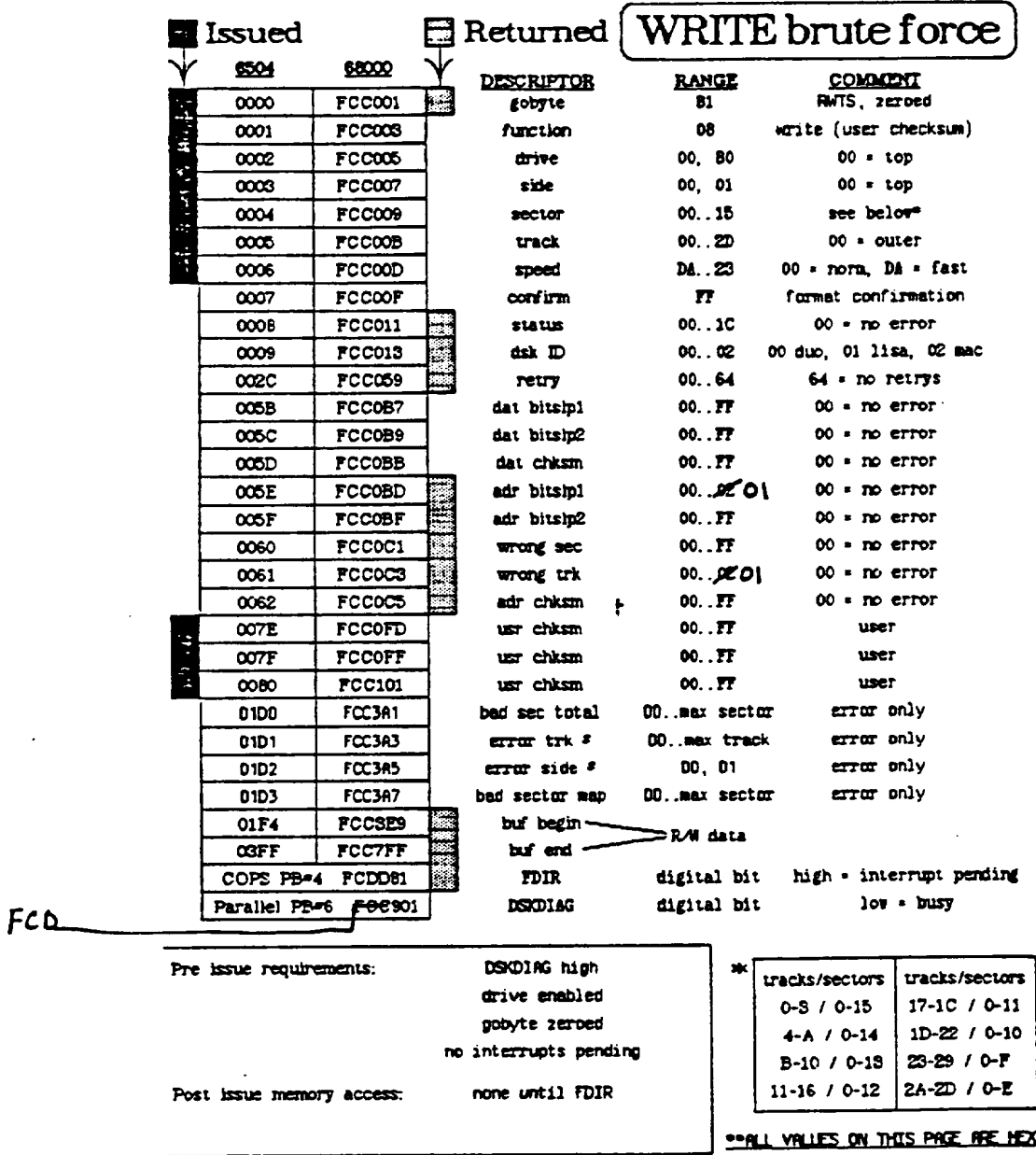


Figure 6-6j. FD Controller Write Brute Force Command

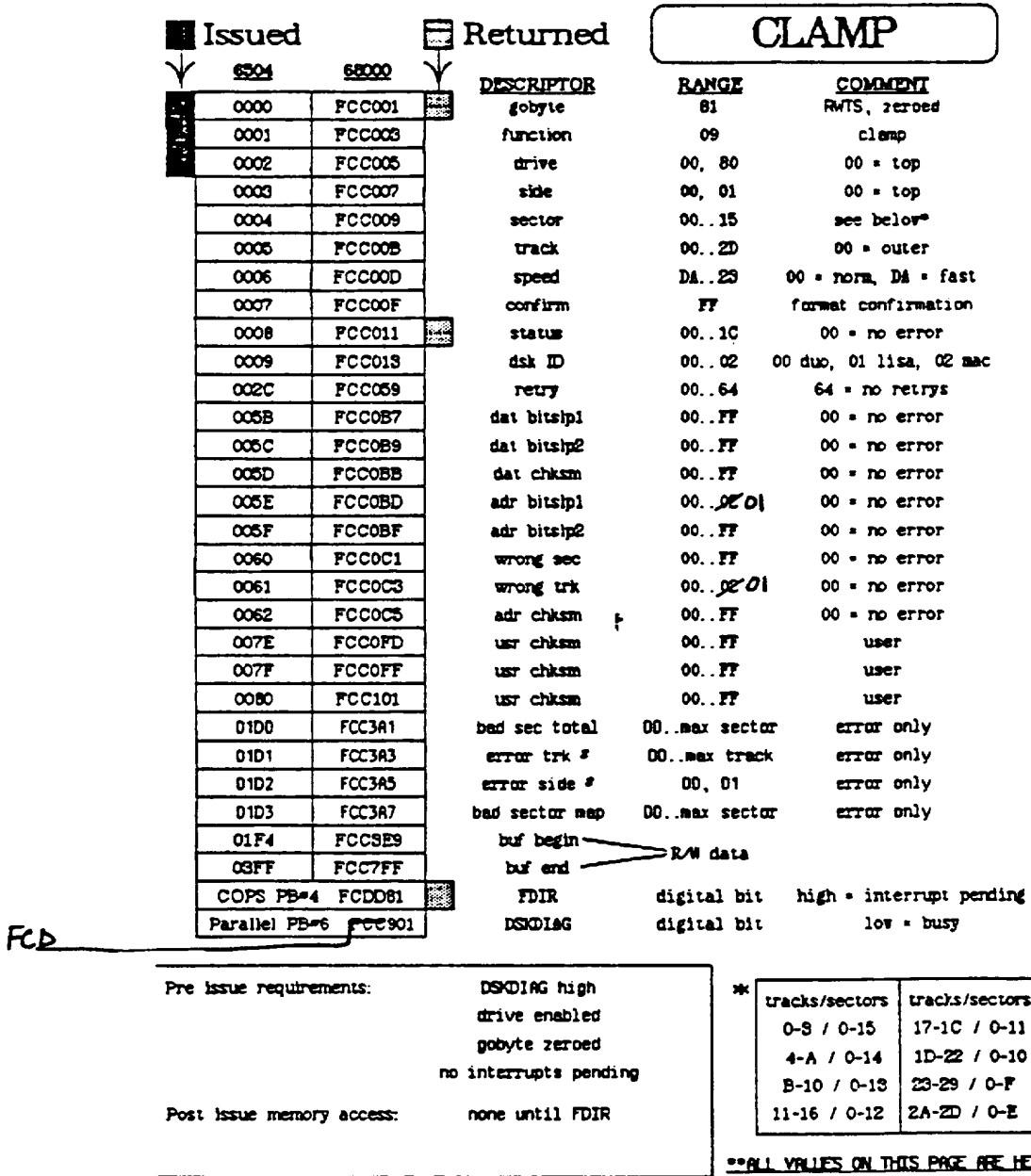


Figure 6-6k. FD Controller Clamp Command

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

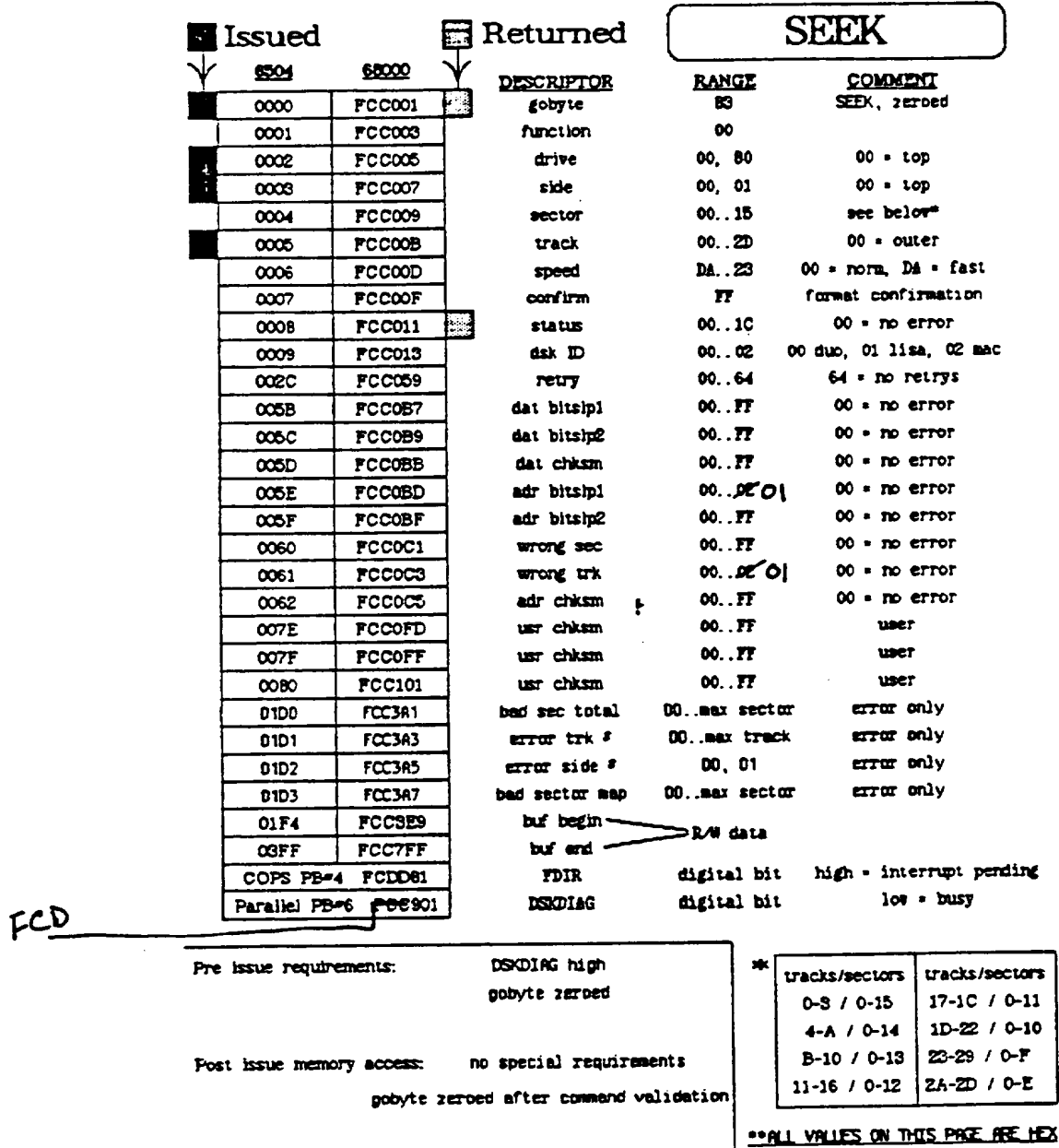


Figure 6-61. FD Controller Seek Command

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

| Issued | | Returned | | CALL USER PROG | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 84 | CALL, zeroed | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | low address | 00..FF | call address | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | high address | 00..3F | call address | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 dup, 01 lisa, 02 mac | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bits/p1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bits/p2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksum | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bits/p1 | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bits/p2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksum | 00..FF | 00 = no error | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksum | 00..FF | user | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksum | 00..FF | user | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksum | 00..FF | user | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | R/W data |
| COPE PB#4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FGG901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high gobyte zeroed

Post issue memory access: no special requirements gobyte zeroed after head park

| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
|----------------|----------------|
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-13 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6m. FD Controller Call User Program Command

| Issued | | Returned | | CLEAR INT STAT | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 6500 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 05 | CLEAR INTERRUPTS, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | mask | 00..XAAAIBBB | X = dont care, B = top dr | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | disk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retries | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsip1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsip1 | 00..01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | R/W data | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | R/W data | | |
| COPS PB#4 | FCDD81 | YDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FE0901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high
gobyte zeroed

Post issue memory access: no special requirements
gobyte zeroed after completion and error status update

| bottom drv | | MASK | | top drv | |
|----------------|---|----------------|---|---------|---|
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| tracks/sectors | | tracks/sectors | | | |
| 0-3 / 0-15 | | 17-1C / 0-11 | | | |
| 4-A / 0-14 | | 1D-22 / 0-10 | | | |
| B-10 / 0-15 | | 23-29 / 0-F | | | |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | | 2A-2D / 0-E | | | |

Figure 6-6n FD Controller Clear Interrupt Status Command

| Issued | | Returned | | DRIVE ENABLE | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 06 | DRIVE INT ENABLE, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC008 | mask | 00..AXXXX | X = dont care, B = top | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | disk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitslp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitslp1 | 00..0C01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0C01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPS PB#4 | FCDD81 | FSIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FCE901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high
gobyte zeroed

Post issue memory access: no special requirements
gobyte zeroed after completion and error status update

| * | |
|----------------|----------------|
| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| 0-S / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-19 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

****ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX**

Figure 6-60. FD Controller Drive Enable Command

| Issued | | Returned | | DRIVE DISABLE | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| \$504 | \$6000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 87 | DRIVE INT DISABLE, zeroed | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | mask | 00..AXXXXXX | X = dont care, B = top | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitsip1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitsip1 | 00..DE01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitsip2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..DE01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | | | |
| COPE PB#4 | FCCD81 | YDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB#6 | FCC901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

| | | | |
|---------------------------|---|------------------|----------------|
| Pre issue requirements: | DSKDIAG high gobyte zeroed | * tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| Post issue memory access: | no special requirements gobyte zeroed after completion and error status update | 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| | | 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| | | B-10 / 0-13 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| | | 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6p. FD Controller Drive Disable Command

| Issued | | Returned | | ROM WAIT | | |
|---------------|--------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| 6504 | 68000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT | | |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 88 | WAIT IN ROM UNTIL FLAGGED | | |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 00 | | | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top | | |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top | | |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* | | |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer | | |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | DA..23 | 00 = norm, DA = fast | | |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation byte | | |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error | | |
| 0009 | FCC013 | disk ID | 00..02 | 00 dup, 01 lisa, 02 mac | | |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retries | | |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitslp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitslp1 | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0E01 | 00 = no error | | |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error | | |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user | | |
| 01D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only | | |
| 01D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only | | |
| 01D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only | | |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | | | | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | R/W data | | |
| COPS PB=4 | FCDD81 | DIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending | | |
| Parallel PB=6 | FCDD91 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy | | |

FCD

| | | | |
|--|--|------------------|----------------|
| Pre issue requirements: | DSKDIAG high go byte zeroed | * tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
| Post issue memory access: | no special requirements gobyte zeroed after head park | 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 6504 waits until 69, 96 sequence in gobyte | | 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| | | B-10 / 0-18 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| | | 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6q. FD Controller ROM Wait Command

September 7th 1982

LISA Hardware Manual

| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> ■ Issued ☐ Returned </div> | | GO AWAY | | |
|--|--------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| \$504 | \$6000 | DESCRIPTOR | RANGE | COMMENT |
| 0000 | FCC001 | gobyte | 89 | LOOP IN ROM PERMANENTLY |
| 0001 | FCC003 | function | 00 | |
| 0002 | FCC005 | drive | 00, 80 | 00 = top |
| 0003 | FCC007 | side | 00, 01 | 00 = top |
| 0004 | FCC009 | sector | 00..15 | see below* |
| 0005 | FCC00B | track | 00..2D | 00 = outer |
| 0006 | FCC00D | speed | D4..23 | 00 = norm, D4 = fast |
| 0007 | FCC00F | confirm | FF | format confirmation |
| 0008 | FCC011 | status | 00..1C | 00 = no error |
| 0009 | FCC013 | dsk ID | 00..02 | 00 duo, 01 lisa, 02 mac |
| 002C | FCC059 | retry | 00..64 | 64 = no retrys |
| 005B | FCC0B7 | dat bitslp1 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005C | FCC0B9 | dat bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005D | FCC0BB | dat chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 005E | FCC0BD | adr bitslp1 | 00..0E 01 | 00 = no error |
| 005F | FCC0BF | adr bitslp2 | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 0060 | FCC0C1 | wrong sec | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 0061 | FCC0C3 | wrong trk | 00..0E 01 | 00 = no error |
| 0062 | FCC0C5 | adr chksm | 00..FF | 00 = no error |
| 007E | FCC0FD | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| 007F | FCC0FF | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| 0080 | FCC101 | usr chksm | 00..FF | user |
| D1D0 | FCC3A1 | bad sec total | 00..max sector | error only |
| D1D1 | FCC3A3 | error trk # | 00..max track | error only |
| D1D2 | FCC3A5 | error side # | 00, 01 | error only |
| D1D3 | FCC3A7 | bad sector map | 00..max sector | error only |
| 01F4 | FCC3E9 | buf begin | R/W data | |
| 03FF | FCC7FF | buf end | | |
| COPS PE#4 | FCDD81 | FDIR | digital bit | high = interrupt pending |
| Parallel PE#6 | F0E901 | DSKDIAG | digital bit | low = busy |

FCD

Pre issue requirements: DSKDIAG high
gobyte zeroed

Post issue memory access: no special requirements

| tracks/sectors | tracks/sectors |
|----------------|----------------|
| 0-3 / 0-15 | 17-1C / 0-11 |
| 4-A / 0-14 | 1D-22 / 0-10 |
| B-10 / 0-18 | 23-29 / 0-F |
| 11-16 / 0-12 | 2A-2D / 0-E |

**ALL VALUES ON THIS PAGE ARE HEX

Figure 6-6r. FD Controller Go Away Command

Execution of the macro commands received from the CPU are under the control of the 6504. Upon completion of the operation, the status of the controller is available in the I/O control block for interrogation by the CPU. Figure 6-7 shows the general flow of macro command transfer and execution.

Figure 6-7. Floppy-Disk Macro Command Flowchart

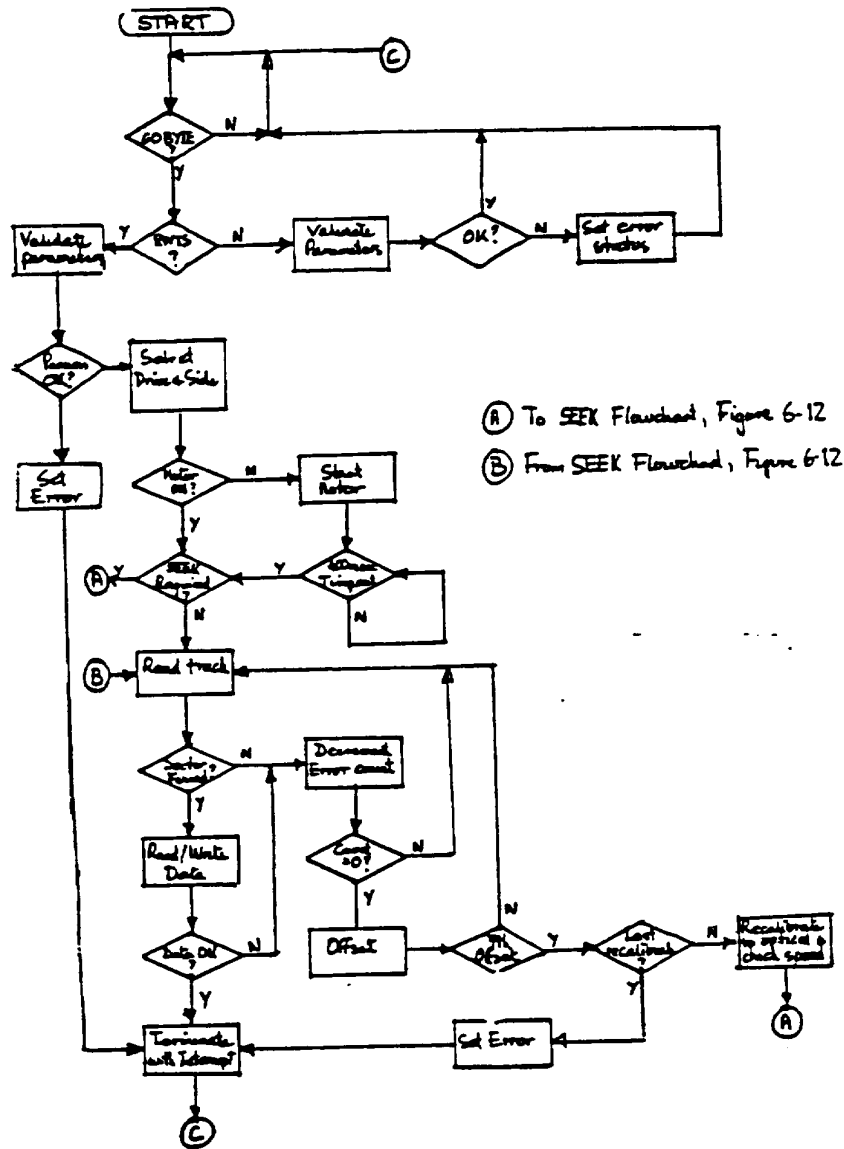


Figure 6-7. FD Macro Command Flowchart

6.3.1 Disk Processor Operation

The 6504 processor executes code from the local ROM storage within the floppy-disk controller. It is routed to the routines contained therein on the basis of the macro command placed in the I/O control block of the local RAM by the 68000.

The 6504 is also responsible for the encoding and decoding of the data for transfer to and from the floppy-disk drive. The command RAM available to the 6504 is logically divided as shown in Figure 6-8.

Figure 6-8. Floppy-Disk Controller I/O Block

The floppy-disk controller RAM is shown in detail in Figure 6-3. The read/write shared RAM is initialized by the 6504 at power-on time. The status block is used by the 6504 to indicate the result of execution of a macro command. The internal I/O block is used by the 6504 for internal flags indicating progress in execution of an operation. Variables used by the 6504 include both local and variable intermixed. The parameter storage is a space available to the 68000 and is not accessed by the 6504. The 6504 stack fills the space assigned to it from the high-order position downwards. The I/O Buffer is a space of 524 bytes used to transfer data between the floppy disk and the 68000.

In order to proceed with disk operations, the 6504 inhibits interruption by the 68000. This enables the timing routines that are performed by the 6504

| | | | |
|------|--------------------------------|--------|------|
| 0000 | GOBYTE | | |
| 0001 | COMMAND | ADR(L) | MASK |
| 0002 | DRIVE | ADR(H) | |
| 0003 | SIDE | | |
| 0004 | SECTOR | | |
| 0005 | TRACK | | |
| 0006 | SPEED | | |
| 0007 | FORMAT CONFIRM | | |
| 0008 | ERRSTAT | | |
| 0009 | DISK ID (0,1 or 2) | | |
| 000A | Reserved for Future Use. | | |
| : | | | |
| : | | | |
| 000F | | | |

Figure 6-8. FD Controller I/O Block

6-32b

to be performed in real time until the operation is complete and termination status is available to be interrogated by the 68000.

The 6504 firmware always executes in one of three possible states:

- * Waiting for a macro command from the 68000
- * Checking the status of the drives
- * Executing a macro command.

When the controller is waiting for a command, the 6504 uses a three-byte counter to control how long the motors are left on after the last macro command executed.

When the two low-order bytes decrement to zero, the status of the disk is checked. This occurs about once per second. The high byte of the counter is directly modifiable by the 68000.

After disk status has been checked, the GOBYTE is examined to see if a macro command has been loaded and is awaiting execution. If the high-order bit is set, for example, if the GOBYTE contains a negative number, this indicates a command waiting. The counter is decremented at approximately 10 microsecond intervals. At a count of zero, the disk drive motors are stopped.

The disk status is checked approximately once each 2/3 second. It is not checked more frequently because the routine takes time and blocks any response to the 68000 while it is executing. It also involves turning on the phi0 line to the disk motor, which causes noise.

Both drives are checked for disk-in-place. Should interrupts be enabled on a drive that changes this status at this time, the 68000 is interrupted to inform it of the fact. The 68000 must clear the interrupt to issue the command that clamps the disk. On a drive for which interrupts are not enabled, the disk-in-place condition causes the disk to be clamped automatically.

If the status shows the eject button was pushed, nothing happens if no disk-in-place condition exists. Otherwise, should interrupts be enabled, an interrupt is sent to the 68000. If interrupts are disabled, the disk is unclamped automatically.

6.3.2 Disk Macro Commands

The 6504 detects that the CPU has transmitted a macro command to the floppy-disk controller by monitoring the high-order bit of the GOBYTE in the I/O block, 10B, for a 1 (one).

Upon detecting this, the first eight bytes of the IOB are copied to the internal I/O block (IIOB). Before any execution, interrupts are checked to see if any are pending. If there are, the Clear Interrupt Status command is allowed to execute.

The macro commands are divided into two classes, depending on whether they do or do not interrupt the 68000 upon completion. Those that do interrupt generally require extensive processing by the 6504 and the 68000 is locked out of shared memory for the duration of instruction execution. Once the class of the command has been determined, the GOBYTE is cleared and the command parameters checked for errors. If an error is detected the cause is placed in the ERRSTAT byte and the command is aborted.

The macro commands that can be received follow. The details of the commands and their associated parameters are shown in Figure 6-6 above.

READ/WRITE DATA

Operations that involve an implied seek operation. The I/O command block therefore contains information on the desired drive, side, track, and sector. The information returned to the 68000 includes the status upon command completion, a pointer to the buffer containing data read, and a counter for the number of retries that were required.

UNCLAMP

The operation that releases the disk currently inserted in the drive so that it can be removed. The input data states which drive, 00 or 80, and the 68000 is interrupted by means of the FDIR signal.

CLAMP

The operation that clamps a disk that has been inserted in a drive for which interrupts are

enabled.

FORMAT and FORMAT TRACK

Operations that overwrite all data and markers on the given track(s). They provide status information, which includes the location of bad sectors that could not be formatted correctly.

VERIFY and VERIFY TRACK

Operations that attempt to read track(s) and inform the 68000 where errors are present in a manner similar to the FORMAT. However, no write operation is performed.

READ BRUTE FORCE (Ignore Checksum)

Identical to a READ operation, except that agreement of the data with the three checksum bytes written at the end of each sector is ignored. It enables partly erroneous data to be read.

WRITE BRUTE FORCE (User Checksum)

Identical to the WRITE operation, except that the command supplies the three checksum bytes to be written at the end of the sector. The controller does not attempt to write the bytes that it would normally generate. Ordinarily, data thus written can only be read without error by a READ BRUTE FORCE (Ignore Checksum) operation.

SEEK

The operation that moves the selected head to the track required, but does not transfer any data.

CALL USER PROGRAM

The operation that initiates a routine that has been down-loaded to the 6504 RAM area.

CLEAR INTERRUPT STATUS

The operation that clears the interrupt status to

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

the data output.

DRIVE ENABLE/DISABLE

The commands used to control the availability of either of the two disk drives to the 68000.

ROM WAIT

The command that continually reads RAM, looking for a two-byte sequence of 69 and 96. Once these are found, the 6504 performs a cold start of the 6504. The purpose of this operation is primarily to remove the 6504 from the RAM area while diagnostics are being performed.

GO AWAY

The command that causes the 6504 to loop in ROM, never accessing RAM or I/O. It is used to prevent an erroneous WRITE operation to parameter memory when the Lisa is turned off. Note that once issued, this command cannot be stopped without resetting the Lisa.

These operations result in a number of possible status codes being returned to the 68000 via the status byte, which indicates an error when it is non-zero. In addition, error counters give the number of occurrences of specific errors during the performance of a given operation.

The floppy-disk controller attempts to retry an operation on the disk, which results in an error condition. This is attempted repeatedly until the error count is exceeded. Retries involve moving the head off track in increments of 1/8th of a track and recalibrating the head using the optical sensor on the drive.

The meaning of the possible error codes and the error counters is shown in Figure 6-9.

| ERROR CODES | SIGNIFICANCE |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| 01 (hex) | Invalid Command |
| 02 | Invalid Drive |
| 03 | Invalid Sector |
| 04 | Invalid Side |
| 05 | Invalid Track |
| 06 | Invalid Clear Mask |
| 07 | No Disk |
| 08 | Drive Not Enabled |
| 09 | Interrupts Pending |
| 0A | Invalid Format Confirmation |
| 0B | ROM Selftest Failure |
| 0C | Unexpected IRQ or NMI |
| 14 | Write Protect Error |
| 15 | Unable to Verify |
| 16 | Unable to Clamp |
| 17 | Unable to Read |
| 18 | Unable to Write |
| 19 | Unable to Unclamp |
| 1A | Unable to Find Calibration |
| 1B | Unable to Adjust Speed |
| 1C | Unable to Write Calibration |

| ERROR COUNTER ADDRESS | SIGNIFICANCE |
|-----------------------|--|
| 005B (hex) | Bitslip Error Count (data field start header) |
| 005C | Bitslip Error Count (data field trailer) |
| 005D | Checksum Error Count |
| 005E | Bitslip Error Count (ID field start header) |
| 005F | Bitslip Error Count (ID field trailer) |
| 0060 | Wrong Sector |
| 0061 | Wrong Track |
| 0062 | Header Checksum Error |

Figure 6-9. Floppy-Disk Controller Error Codes

6.3.3 Data Encoding/Decoding

Data transferred to the floppy-disk controller by the 68000 for storage on the drives is not written directly onto the disk. The data are encoded in the

following manner before it is stored:

- * Three 8-bit bytes become four encoded bytes,
- * The MSB of each encoded byte on the disk begins with a one,
- * No more than two zero bits occur consecutively.

The data are encoded under control of the 6504 after it has been placed in the buffer by the 68000, as shown in Figure 6-10.

—→ *u#s*

GCR Codeword Table

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0 | 96 | 97 | 9A | 9B | 9D | 9E | 9F | A6 | A7 | AB | AC | AD | AE | AF | B2 | B3 |
| 10 | B4 | B5 | B6 | B7 | B9 | BA | BB | BC | BD | BE | BF | CB | CD | CE | CF | D3 |
| 20 | D6 | D7 | D9 | DA | DB | DC | DD | DE | DF | E5 | E6 | E7 | E9 | EA | EB | EC |
| 30 | ED | EE | EF | F2 | F3 | F4 | F5 | F6 | F7 | F9 | FA | FB | FC | FD | FE | FF |

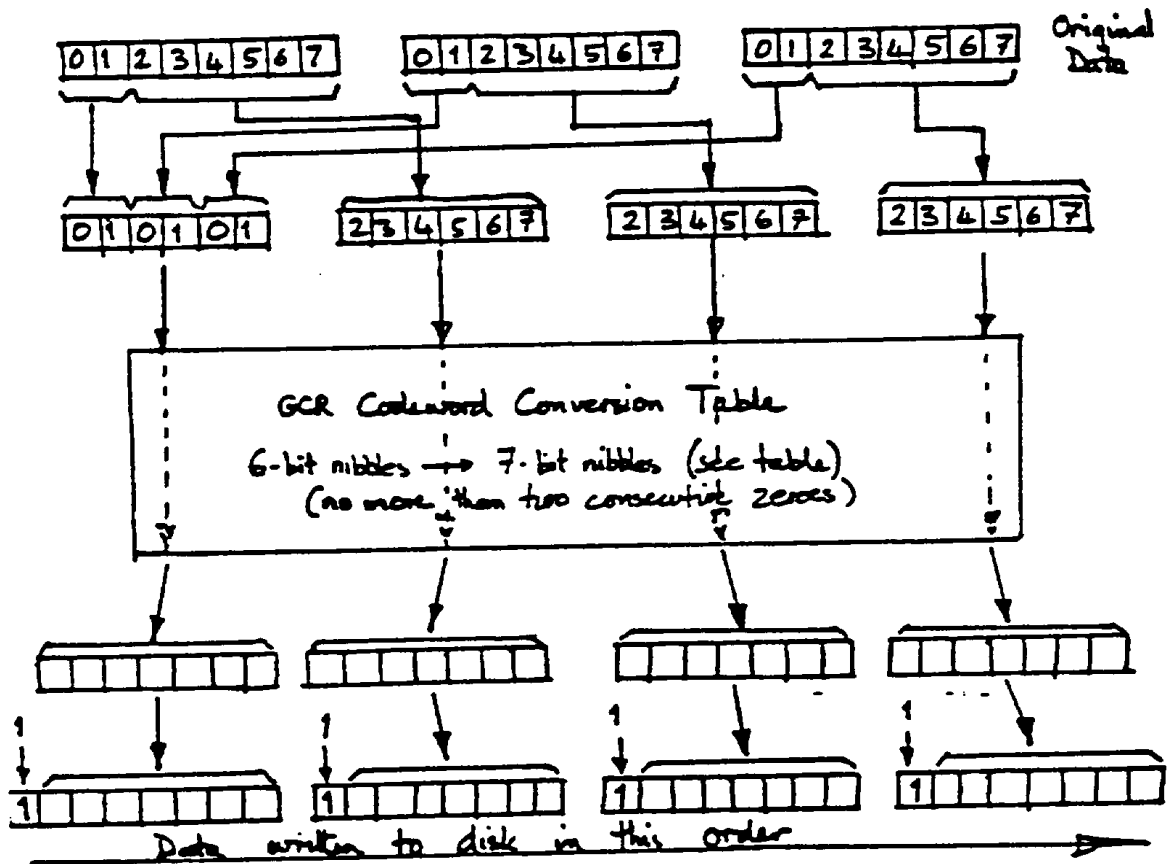
Figure 6-10. Floppy-Disk Data Encoding Scheme

The MSB of each encoded byte must be a one so the drive state machine can identify byte boundaries when the data are being read from disk. The requirement that no more than two zeroes occur consecutively permits data to be written without intervening clock bits. Transitions from the data bits themselves occur frequently enough to permit the state machine to remain synchronized with the data being read.

The data are encoded from groups of three 8-bit bytes into four encoded bytes by a table lookup operation. It so happens that within the 128 possible codings of the other seven bits written to the disk within one byte, there are more than 64 codings that satisfy the requirement of no more than two consecutive zeroes.

6.3.4 Disk Formatting

A number of codings that are not used in data translation are used to indicate a number of special



GCR Codeword Table

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0 | 96 | 97 | 9A | 9B | 9D | 9E | 9F | A6 | A7 | AB | AC | AD | AE | AF | B2 | B3 |
| 10 | B4 | B5 | B6 | B7 | B9 | BA | BB | BC | BD | BE | BF | CB | CD | CE | CF | D3 |
| 20 | D6 | D7 | D9 | DA | DB | DC | DD | DE | DF | E5 | E6 | E7 | E9 | EA | EB | EC |
| 30 | ED | EE | EF | F2 | F3 | F4 | F5 | F6 | F7 | F9 | FA | FB | FC | FD | FE | FF |

Figure 6-10. FD Data Encoding Scheme
Floppy-Disk

codes, such as headers within the format and speed synchronization bytes.

The number of sectors and tracks are shown in Figure 6-11. Note that the number of sectors is dependent on the track. This is due to the technique of varying the rotational speed of the drive to allow for the increased density possible on the outer tracks of a disk.

→ *ll#s*

| Tracks | Sectors | r.p.m. | Speed Code |
|--------|---------|--------|------------|
| 0-3 | 22 | 218.3 | DC (hex) |
| 4-10 | 21 | 228.7 | CC |
| 11-16 | 20 | 240.1 | B8 |
| 17-22 | 19 | 252.7 | A4 |
| 23-28 | 18 | 266.8 | 8E |
| 29-34 | 17 | 282.5 | 75 |
| 35-41 | 16 | 300.1 | 59 |
| 42-45 | 15 | 320.1 | 38 |

Figure 6-11. Lisa Disk Format

Tracks 0 through 45 are normal data tracks. The number of sectors contained on each track depends on the track position as shown. This is due to differing lengths of each track. The speed of disk rotation is dynamically changed by the floppy-disk controller to take advantage of this.

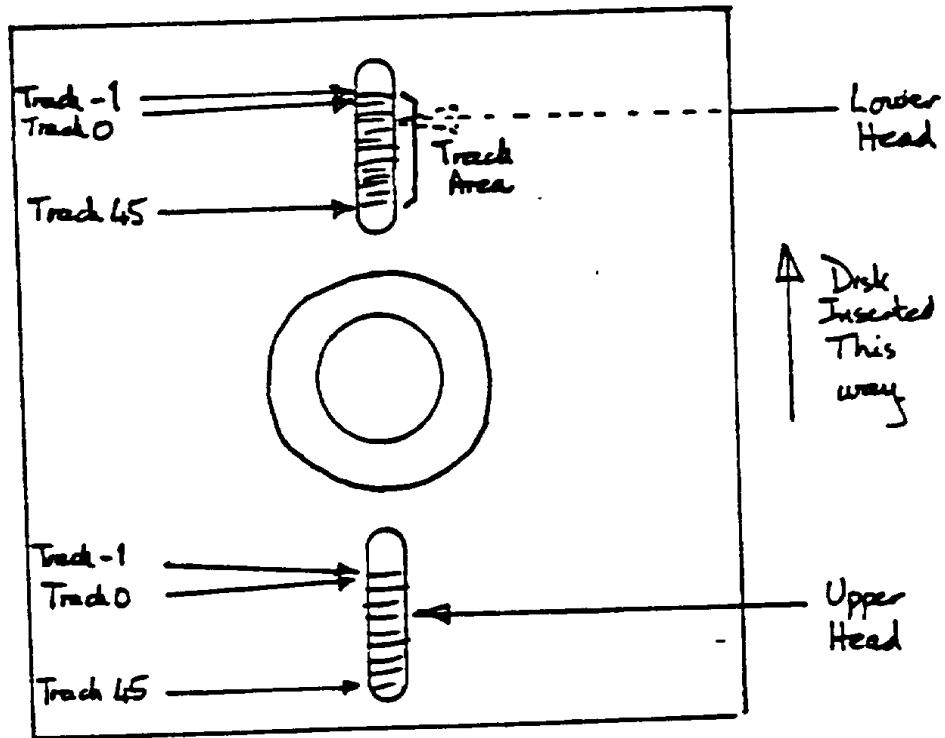
Track -1 is used as a speed synchronization track. It is never written except during disk formatting. The 6504 makes use of this track to adjust the speed of rotation to within 0.4% of the desired speed.

Each sector is divided into four distinct fields, as described below:

- * Header sync field
- * Header field
- * Data sync field
- * Data field.

HEADER SYNC FIELD

Contains a pattern of ones and zeroes that permits the disk state machine to synchronize with the data coming from disk. It consists of the



| Tracks | Sectors | r.p.m. | Speed Code |
|--------|---------|--------|------------|
| 0-3 | 22 | 218.3 | DC (hex) |
| 4-10 | 21 | 228.7 | CC |
| 11-16 | 20 | 240.1 | B8 |
| 17-22 | 19 | 252.7 | A4 |
| 23-28 | 18 | 266.8 | 8E |
| 29-34 | 17 | 282.5 | 75 |
| 35-41 | 16 | 300.1 | 59 |
| 42-45 | 15 | 320.1 | 38 |

Figure 6-11. LISA Disk Format

following pattern:

32 "Self Synch" FFs
 10 bytes A9 Speed Synchronization
 (only before Sector #0)

HEADER FIELD

Uniquely identifies the sector on the disk, using the following pattern:

D5)
 AA) Header field identification
 96)
 1 byte TRACK identification number
 1 byte SECTOR identification number
 1 byte SIDE identification. 00 or 01
 1 byte VOLUME identification. May be one of
 00=AppleII or ///, 01=Lisa, 02=Mac
 1 byte CHECKSUM coding. This is formed by
 XOR'ing the previous four bytes
 DE)
 AA) "Bit slip" marks
 1 byte Pad byte where head is turned off

DATA SYNC FIELD

Similar in purpose to the header sync field. It has the pattern:

5 "Self Synch" FFs

DATA FIELD

Contains the data written to the drive. Normally this is the only field written to except during a format operation. It has the pattern:

D5)
 AA) Data marks that identify a data field
 AD)
 1 byte Sector number
 524 bytes User data
 3 bytes Checksum formed by adding data
 DE)
 AA) "Bit slip" marks
 1 byte Pad byte where head is turned off

Note that the format is given in terms of the bytes handled by the 68000. The actual number of

bytes written to the disk is greater, since three normal bytes map into four bytes on the disk, as given by Figure 6-10.

Self synch refers to a technique whereby two zeroes are inserted between each synch byte written to the disk. The state machine requires no more than four self-synch fields, 8 ones and 2 zeroes, to synchronize its read operation with disk rotation.

6.3.5 Disk State Machine Operation

The state machine that controls the flow of data across the drive interface is shown in Figure 6-5 above.

There are five external inputs to the state machine. These are the RDA, WRD, and SNS lines from the disk, and the A2 and A3 control lines from the control outputs of the LS259 shown at C-2 on sheet 4. The latter two are used to control the command that the state machine is currently executing. The four possible commands are:

- * Sense
- * Read
- * Write
- * Write Load.

In addition, there are two signals that are input to the state machine ROM. These are the QA output of the shift register, which provides the data stream to be written to the disk, and the output of the edge detector at D-1, which presents the data transitions to the ROM as ones.

SPINDLE MOTOR SPEED CONTROL

During normal operation, the disk drive controls the rotation by means of an integral speed control circuit. When the drive performs a seek operation outside of the current range of tracks, the speed is adjusted according to the values given in Figure 6-11. Disk speed is maintained to within 3% of that desired.

DRIVE REZERO and SEEK

Performed in a similar manner to ??? in that they both involve carriage motion. The four lines ϕ_0 - ϕ_3 are manipulated to cause the carriage motor to step the required amount of tracks. In the case of a rezero, a sense operation determines whether the optical recalibration line is asserted to indicate that the carriage is at the known position of track -1.

Carriage movement is defined by the order in which the phi lines are manipulated. Thus a step through ϕ_3 , ϕ_2 , ϕ_1 , and ϕ_0 moves the heads toward the calibration point, towards the front of the Lisa, by one half track. Stepping through ϕ_0 , ϕ_1 , ϕ_2 , and ϕ_3 moves the heads away from the calibration point by one half track.

In order to minimize the positioning error from mechanical tolerances seeks are always completed by moving the carriage in the same direction, towards the calibration point, for the last half track, which is four increments. This means that seek direction is reversed during a seek away from the calibration point.

Carriage movement is performed in increments of 1/8th of a track. Allowance is made for head inertia by having three distinct time durations of each phi state before proceeding to the next. An example of a seek is shown in Figure 6-12.

Figure 6-12. Seek Flowchart

WRITE and WRITE LOAD

These commands operate together to provide the write function to the drive. Each command consists of 16 states in the state machine. Each state is passed through in one clock cycle of 250 ns.

Since the bit time on the disk is 2 microseconds, the 16 states correspond to two bit times. The

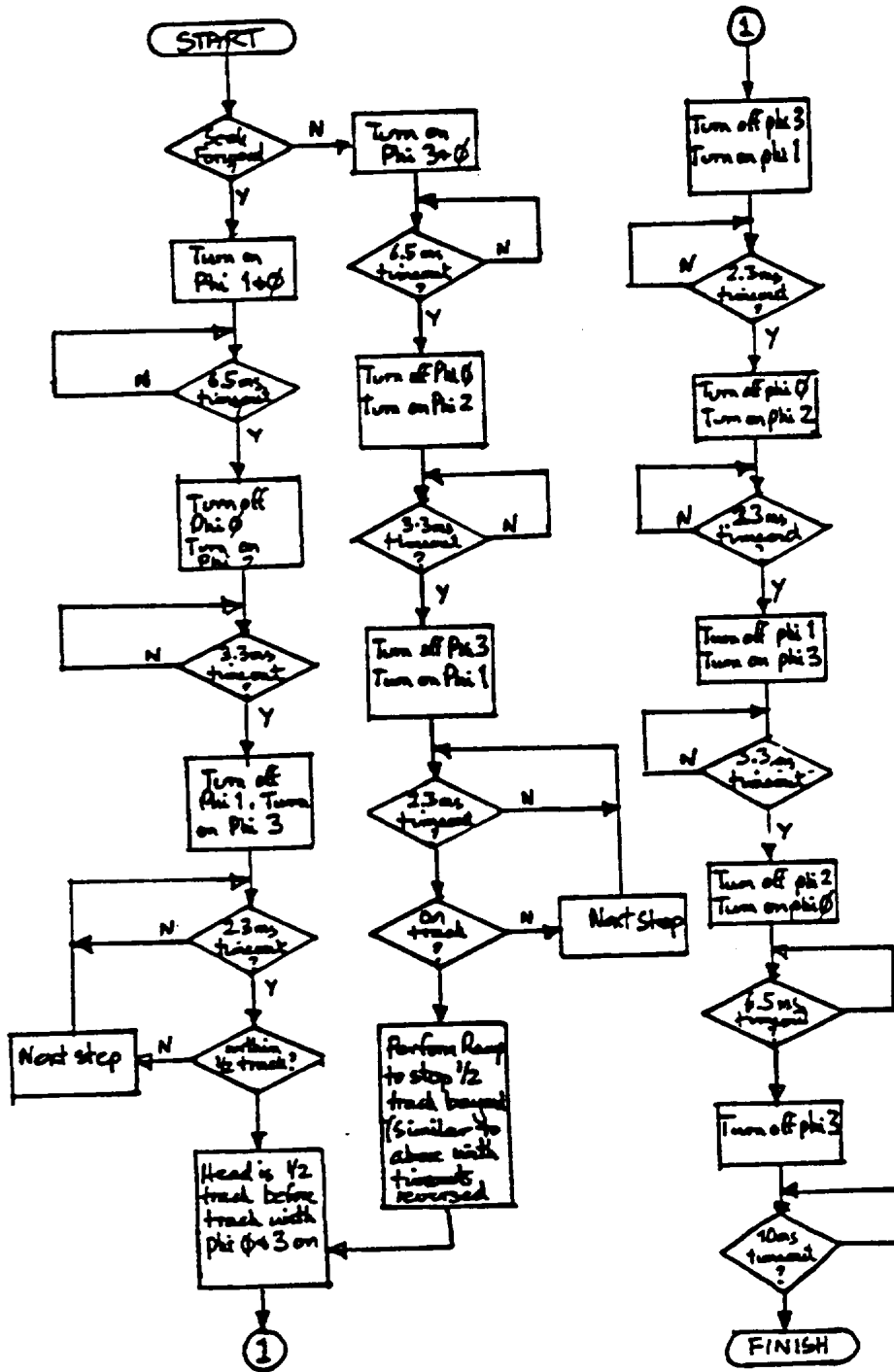


Figure 6-12. Seek Flowchart

6-48b

timing of the program loops in the 6504A is such that exactly eight bit times occur between each time that data are written to the shift register. This write operation also causes the upper control decoder to alter the A2 and A3 input configuration to the ROM at D-2, which alters the state machine into the Write Load command.

The state transitions in both the Write and Write Load programs are designed so that that the WRD signal is connected to the high-order state bit. The QA output of the shift register thus controls the data that is written to the disk.

READ

The read data are passed through two flops in series to detect positive transitions. The format of the Lisa floppy disks is such that no more than two zero bits occur sequentially. The read command shifts a one into the shift register when a transition occurs and shifts in a zero when 2 microseconds pass without a transition.

It also attempts to hold the data in the shift register for as long as possible when QA goes high to indicate that an entire byte is correctly aligned in the shift register. Following this, the byte is transferred to RAM by the 6504, and the state machine clears the shift register in preparation for the next byte. Recall that all bytes written to disk had a one in the MSB position after data had been encoded.

SENSE

This is used to poll the status of the disk drives. The HDS and phi0 lines are used to select which of the four data bits are to be read according to the following scheme:

| HDS | phi0 | Status Data |
|-----|------|-----------------------|
| 0 | 0 | Write Protect |
| 0 | 1 | Optical Recalibration |
| 1 | 0 | Eject Button |
| 1 | 1 | Disk in Place |

After the control lines have been configured to sense the required data, the command is initiated

by setting the A2 and A3 inputs to 1@2. The MSB of the shift register contains the sense bit. All 16 possible states in the sense command are identical and cause a shift right operation.

6.4 The Serial I/O Controller

The I/O Board contains two serial interface ports, A and B, that are controlled by a single serial I/O controller. The software interface to this controller is discussed in Chapter 2. The A-port conforms to the RS232A specification; the B-port conforms to RS422.

The control logic is shown on the right side of sheet 3 of schematic 050-4008. Refer to the block diagram of the board in Figure 6-1 for a view of the hardware context in which the serial controller operates. Programming of the ports is discussed in subsection 3.5.1.

6.4.1 The Serial Port Controller

The serial ports are controlled by an 8530 dual serial-port controller. A discussion of the controller can be found in the 8530 user manual.

The controller connects to the internal I/O board D bus. It is selected when the VMA signal coincides with AS. The additional selection is performed on the read and write inputs, which are derived from the port decoding logic at B-3 on sheet 2.

The WSIO/ signal enables a write to the controller, while an RSIO/ enables a read from it. These signals originate in the controller decode logic at A-3 on sheet 2. A configuration of address lines A11-A9 of 001 selects the serial-port controller. The READ line distinguishes a read from a write.

The two low-order address bits of the system address bus A1 and A2 are used to select between the two ports and to define whether control information or data are being transferred.

The PCLK device clock is derived from the 4 M, 4 MHz, clock signal at A-3 on sheet 2. This is in turn derived from the 16 MHz clock from the floppy-disk controller.

The controller interrupts the processor through the RSIR/ signal on the system bus. Selection of registers and functions within the controller is

made by means of the D/C/ and A/B/ pins. The first indicates whether data or command information is present on the bus lines. The second selects between the A and B ports. Address lines A1 and A2 enable software to control this.

6.4.2 The Serial Ports

The two serial ports are provided in the form of two 25-pin DB connectors, as described in subsection 3.5.1.

The logic interface is shown on sheet 3 of the schematics at A-1 through D-1. The signals that correspond to port A are in the upper section of the page and have signal names ending in "1." The signal names and their function correspond to standard RS232A nomenclature. The 1488 and 1489 devices convert the TTL signals from the controller into the + or -12 V levels of the interface and vice-versa.

Port B signals are in the lower part of the page. They provide an RS422-standard interface through use of the 26LS30 and 26LS32 devices.

6.4.3 Baud Rate Generation

Selection of the baud rate used in either of the two ports is performed internally by the 8530 with the aid of the 3.68 MHz oscillator between the SYN0 and TRXCB lines. Refer to the 8530 user manual for details on how baud rates are selected.

6.4.4 Serial Port Operation

The two serial ports operate independently of one another. For details, refer to the serial-port controller user manual.

6.5 Parallel Port Controller

The parallel port is used to interface a parallel peripheral to the Lisa. A typical application is in the attachment of an Apple ProFile hard disk drive.

The interface is discussed operationally in Chapter 2 of this manual. The logic is shown on sheet 3 of schematic 050-4008.

The hardware consists of a 6522 I/O port device and some

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

associated logic. The 6522 is a 68000-type peripheral and is described in the 6522 data sheet.

6.5.1 68000 Bus Interface for the Parallel-Port Controller

This is provided by the 6522. The I/O Board internal D-bus connects to the data lines of the 6522, while addressing within the 16 locations contained in the port controller is performed with the system bus address lines A3 through A6.

Device selection is performed by having both the DSKPT/ and VMA signals true. The former is provided by the I/O decode at B-3 on sheet 1, while the latter indicates that the processor is aware that it is communicating with a 68000-type device and has modified the bus signals accordingly. Refer to the 68000 user manual for a discussion of the VMA signal.

The resulting address map for the port is shown in Figures 2-11 and 2-12.

6522 reset is performed at the same time as Lisa reset by means of the RESET/ signal at D-4, which originates on the system bus.

The 6522 interrupts the 68000 by means of the IOIR/ line, which is wired-ORed with the floppy-disk controller interrupt (FDIR/) originating at B-1 on sheet 4.

6522 clocking is performed by the E signal from the system bus, which is connected to the phi2 input and provides a 68000-type compatible clock.

6.5.2 Parallel Port Interface

The 6522 provides two 8-bit ports, the A port and the B port, for use in the interface itself. The A port is used as the 8-bit parallel data interface, while the B port is used for control lines.

The LS280 at D-3 is used to check parity as data are being read from the interface into the Lisa. The result of the check is latched in the LS109 JK flop at D-3. The Reset input is presented as PRES/ to the keyboard port at C-3 on sheet 2 to permit the flip-flop to be reset. The Q output is on the 6522. The second LS280 at D-3 is used to generate parity.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

The lines on the B port are used as control and status lines on the interface as follows:

BSY connects to PB1 and indicates to the 6522 that the interface is busy. It also connects to CA1 to provide the data interrupt input.

Open Cable Detect (OCD) connects to the PB0 line of the 6522. This signal is normally held low at the peripheral end to signify that the cable is connected. The Lisa monitors this line and assumes that no transfer can be performed when it is high.

The signal that is driven by PB2 is used as an enable to the drivers' interface. When it is low, both the LS245 8-bit data transceiver and the LS244 control line drivers are enabled.

DR/W/ is output from the PB3 line to the peripheral as an indication of the direction of data transfer. It is also used to define the direction of the data transceiver's drivers.

CMD/ is output to the peripheral from the PB4 line.

DSKDIAG is not input from the peripheral but originates in the floppy-disk controller section at B-1 on sheet 4. It indicates on PB6 that the 68000 is operating the interface in diagnostic mode.

The port control lines of the 6522 are used as follows:

CA1 is used to monitor the state of the BSY line from the peripheral and to strobe the data on the A port accordingly.

CA2 is used to provide the Peripheral Strobe (PSTRB/) signal to the interface, which indicates that either data are available for a write or data has been received for a read operation.

CB2 is used to monitor the parity status of the interface.

6.5.3 Parallel Port Operation

Operation of the parallel port is under software control and lies outside the scope of this manual. Refer to software documentation and Chapter 2 of this manual for programming information on this port.

6.5.4 Parallel Port Timing

Timing on the parallel port is programmable and a function of software. It therefore lies outside the scope of this manual. Refer to the data sheet for a discussion of the timing limitations on the 6522.

6.6 The Keyboard/Mouse Controller

The interface to the keyboard and the mouse is implemented by means of a 6522 VIA peripheral port device and a COPS single-chip controller. It is also used to provide software control of the power on-off function and to provide a real-time-clock.

Details on the 6522 can be found in the data sheet. Refer to the COPS user manual for information on the COPS. The logic that comprises the interface controller is shown on sheet 2 of schematic 050-4008 in Appendix C. Programming of the controller is discussed in subsection 2.5.4.

6.6.1 68000 Bus Interface for the Keyboard/Mouse Controller

This interface is implemented with the 6522. The internal I/O board D-bus connects to the D0-D7 data lines. Selection among the 16 internal register destinations is performed by the A1 through A4 address lines from the system bus.

The device is selected when both the VMA signal on the system bus and the I/O decode output at pin 7 of device U4E are asserted. This indicates that the processor board is performing an access to the keyboard/mouse controller in a 6800 compatible cycle.

The address map of the controller as seen by the software is shown in Figure 2-15.

The device is clocked by the E signal and reset by the RESET/ line.

6.6.2 The COPS Processor

The COP421 shown at D-3 on sheet 2 is described in detail in the COPS user manual. As well as controlling data flow from the keyboard and mouse, the COP421 is responsible for maintaining the Time of Day clock. To do that it requires a power supply that is independent of the main supply; one that remains on even when the Lisa is turned off, as described in the next subsection.

The COPS connects to the A port of the 6522, with the CA1 and CA2 control signals of the 6522 being attached to the SO and SI lines of the COPS. In addition, the port PB6 control output signal connects with D3.

The other lines from the COPS are used as follows:

SK is the output to the keyboard. In conjunction with the D2 line, it is used to send a synchronization pulse to the keyboard to initiate data transfer.

G0 and G1 are the multiplexed data inputs from the keyboard and the mouse.

D1 and D2 are the select signals that are used to control the data multiplexer which provides keyboard and mouse data on G0 and G1.

D0 is used to switch the Lisa on and off under control of firmware resident in the COPS.

G2 is used to interrupt the processor by means of the NMI/ , non-maskable interrupt, at B-2 on sheet 2, which is presented to the processor board via the system bus, and to detect a power failure via D5 at B-2 on sheet 2.

G3 is used to sense the state of the on-off switch on the lower-left of the Lisa cabinet.

CK1 and CK2 are inputs to the COPS oscillator from timing circuit at D-2. The clock is crystal-controlled to permit the time of day to be kept accurately.

RST is the COPS internal reset input which is used to perform a power-on reset in the COPS should its own power have failed for any reason.

6.6.3 Keyboard/Mouse Interface

Keyboard data are input on the KBD line. This line is pulled low by the COPS generating a SYNC pulse to signal the keyboard to send data if it has any. This is done via the COPS SK output with the D2 output being asserted simultaneously.

The keyboard responds with an ACK pulse on the KBD line, followed by a serial 8-bit byte which indicates the code for a key pressed or released. The keycodes are outlined in Figure 2-14. If no key has changed its state, no ACK pulse is sent.

The mouse interface consists of the LS153 dual 4-to-1 multiplexer at D-2. The selection of data to be input to the COPS is performed by configuring the D1 and D2 outputs from the COPS.

The COPS polls the signal states by reading the signals input to the multiplexer. The movement of the mouse is detected by pulse edges on the relevant direction lines. The three inputs SW0-SW2 reflect the state of up to three switches on the mouse. In the current Lisa only one mouse switch is present and is connected to the SW0 line.

The data presented to the COPS is selected as shown in Figure 6-13. Refer to Chapter 8 for a discussion of the keyboard side of this interface.

Figure 6-13. Keyboard Data Format and Timing

6.6.4 Software On-Off/Reset Logic

The software on-off switch is sensed through the PWRSW/ signal. In addition, pulling the RESET/ signal high when the Lisa is turned off pulls the PWRSW/ signal low and turns the Lisa on. Note that this can be also accomplished by pulling RESET/ to +5STBY with a 100 ohm resistor.

The COPS can turn the Lisa on or off, via the ON line. The COPS may be programmed to turn the Lisa on under control of the real-time-clock (RTC). The RTC is not capable of turning the computer off.

6.6.5 Other Control Lines

The keyboard and mouse controller makes use of the A port of the 6522. The B port is used to provide an interface to the Lisa for several control lines that would otherwise require additional hardware to implement.

The use of the B port lines is as follows:

PB0 is used to reset the keyboard under software control.

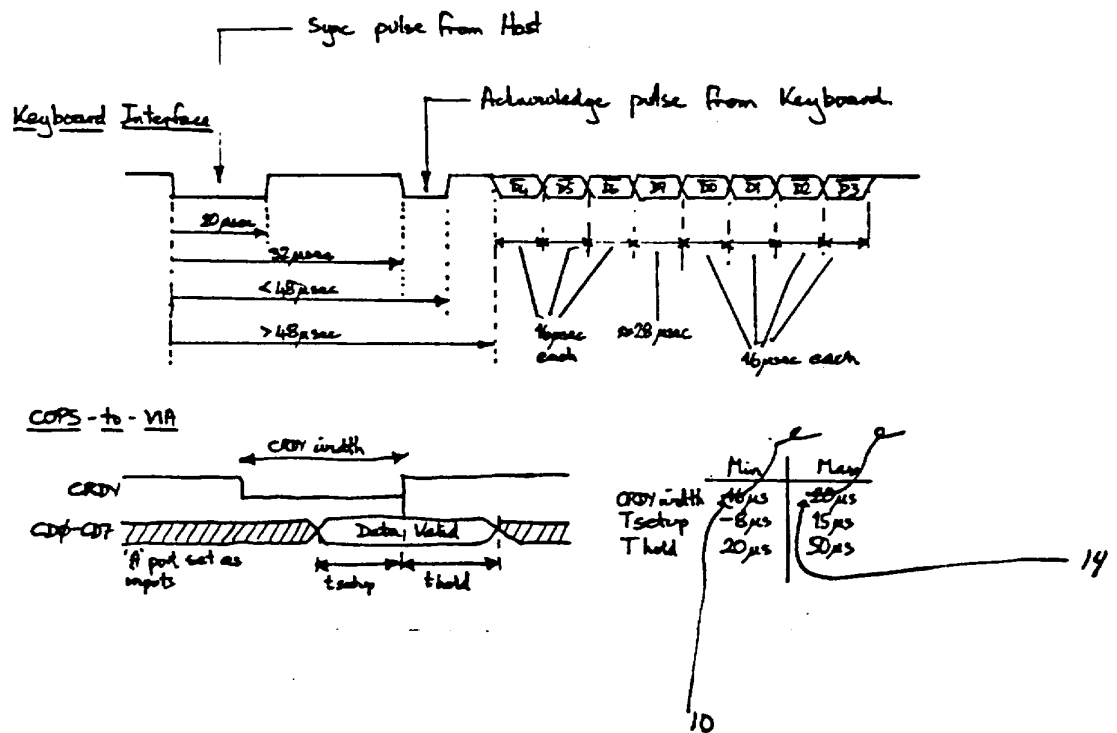


Figure 6-13. Keyboard Data Format and Timing

PB1-PB3 are used for output of a digital value to control the speaker volume.

PB4 is used to input the floppy-disk interrupt (FDIR) status, which has been latched by the floppy-disk processor in the LS259 at B-1 on sheet 4.

PB5 is used to sense the PRES/ reset, derived from the CRES/ bus signal at C-3. The CRES/ signal is pulled low by RESET/ to reset the parallel device. PB5 can be used to reset a parity error on the parallel interface at D-3 on sheet 3.

PB6 is used for the COPS handshake as described above.

PB7 is used to output the CRES/ reset signal to the parallel port interface at pin 117 of the J1 connector.

6.7 Miscellaneous Logic

The I/O board contains several blocks of logic, which have been located there for optimal use of board space within the Lisa.

This section describes the hardware implementation of the following functions:

- * Speaker volume control
- * Battery power control
- * Video contrast latch.

6.7.1 Speaker Volume Control

The Lisa is equipped with a speaker; its volume can be controlled by the software. The value of the volume is presented by the PB1-PB3 lines of the Keyboard 6522, and these are input to the D-to-A ladder network shown at C-4 on sheet 5.

The resulting analog value is presented as a voltage to pin 10 of device U10A. This operates as a voltage follower to present a high input impedance to the D-to-A ladder network.

The resulting output defines the speaker level, while the TONE output from the 6522 defines the frequency. The output signal is presented to pin 13 of A10, which drives the power transistors Q3 and Q4

to give the speaker output signal.

6.7.2 Battery Supply and Control

The Lisa is equipped with a battery located on the I/O board. It provides a +5 V supply to operate the COPS in the keyboard/mouse controller should the Lisa be completely disconnected from a power source, so that the Time-of-Day clock logic can continue to function.

The battery automatically recharges itself when the Lisa is on. The battery is capable of running the COPS for 10 hours without loss of data. Once battery power is exhausted, the battery supply shuts down to avoid erratic COPS operation.

The circuit is shown at the bottom of sheet 5. It is designed around the 4193 voltage regulator. Recharge power for the batteries is provided by the +12 VDC supply through diode D7. Zener D8 limits the voltage output of the +5 V supply.

The 4193 operates by pulling the LX output to ground, then allowing it to fly back up to produce the output voltage. L1 is the flyback inductor, while capacitor C12 smoothes the output.

The frequency with which the 4193 does this depends on the voltage sensed by the LBR and VF inputs on the precision voltage-divider formed by resistors R19-R21. The VF input looks for a 1.3 V reference. The voltage is higher than this when the +5 VSTBY supply is operational, which supplies a level of approximately 5.7 V. Allowing for a diode drop of 0.3 V across D3 still results in the +5 V level being pulled to over 5 V. At this time, the battery is being recharged.

When the Lisa is disconnected from a power source, the +5 STBY is removed and the +5 V level begins to drop, which triggers the 4193 through the sensing inputs from the ladder to attempt to restore the level. The 4193 is capable of providing an acceptable +5 V output for battery voltages as low as +2.4 V.

The LBR input detects a 4.5 V level on the +5 V output, and pulls the LBD output low. This resets the flop formed by the two gates of CMOS device U14B and pin 4 goes low. This forces Q6 to be back-biased and disconnects the load from the battery output. This is done to avoid cell

reversal, which can destroy nickel/cadmium battery cells.

When the normal 5 V supply is operational, the pin 10 output of the inverter causes the flop to be held off and transistor Q6 is always on.

6.7.3 Video Contrast Latch

This is shown in the upper part of sheet 5 of the schematics. The data are input via the parallel port interface 6522A port, which is latched in the CMOS 74C174 at D-3. The data is presented to the summing network, which presents the result of the D-to-A conversion as a DC voltage to pin 3 of the low-input-impedance voltage follower in the first stage of device U10A.

The output of this is fed through R19 to the second stage of device U10A, which functions as an inverting amplifier with a gain of unity. The bias network formed by resistors R10 and R11 provides a bias voltage of approximately 3.5 V to pin 5. The RESET signal pulls this point to ground, which blanks the screen.

The CONT output can vary between +2 V, fully black, and +7 V, fully white. This signal is an input to the video board, which is described in Chapter 7.

CHAPTER 7. THE VIDEO BOARD

The video board provides most of the analog circuitry that operates the Lisa's CRT. The board is mounted on the rear wall of the CRT enclosure and contains hazardous voltages. Extreme care should be taken when using the Lisa with the video board exposed for troubleshooting.

The video digital control logic on the processor board drives the video board. Refer to section 4.5 for a description of the video control.

7.1 Block Diagram

To better describe the video board's operation, it has been functionally divided into these major blocks:

- * Power-supply circuits
- * Video-amplifier circuits
- * Vertical deflection circuits
- * Horizontal deflection circuits.

The video board processes the bit stream of serial display data it receives from the processor board and translates the data into a display by means of the raster scan on the screen. To perform this, signals that synchronize the raster sweep with the data are also provided by the processor board.

An overview of the video board is shown in Figure 7-1 as a block diagram. This chapter refers to the video board schematic, number 050-4012-A, in Appendix D.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Figure 7-1. Video Board Block Diagram

7.2 Power-Supply Circuits

Power is supplied to the video board via the connector at the upper left of the schematic in Appendix D. The +12 VDC is the same as that supplied to other circuits in the Lisa. The +33 VDC is used exclusively by the video board. Refer to Chapter 10 for a discussion of the power supply and its capabilities.

last edited by Pilkington

7-2a

31 May 1983 @11:30am

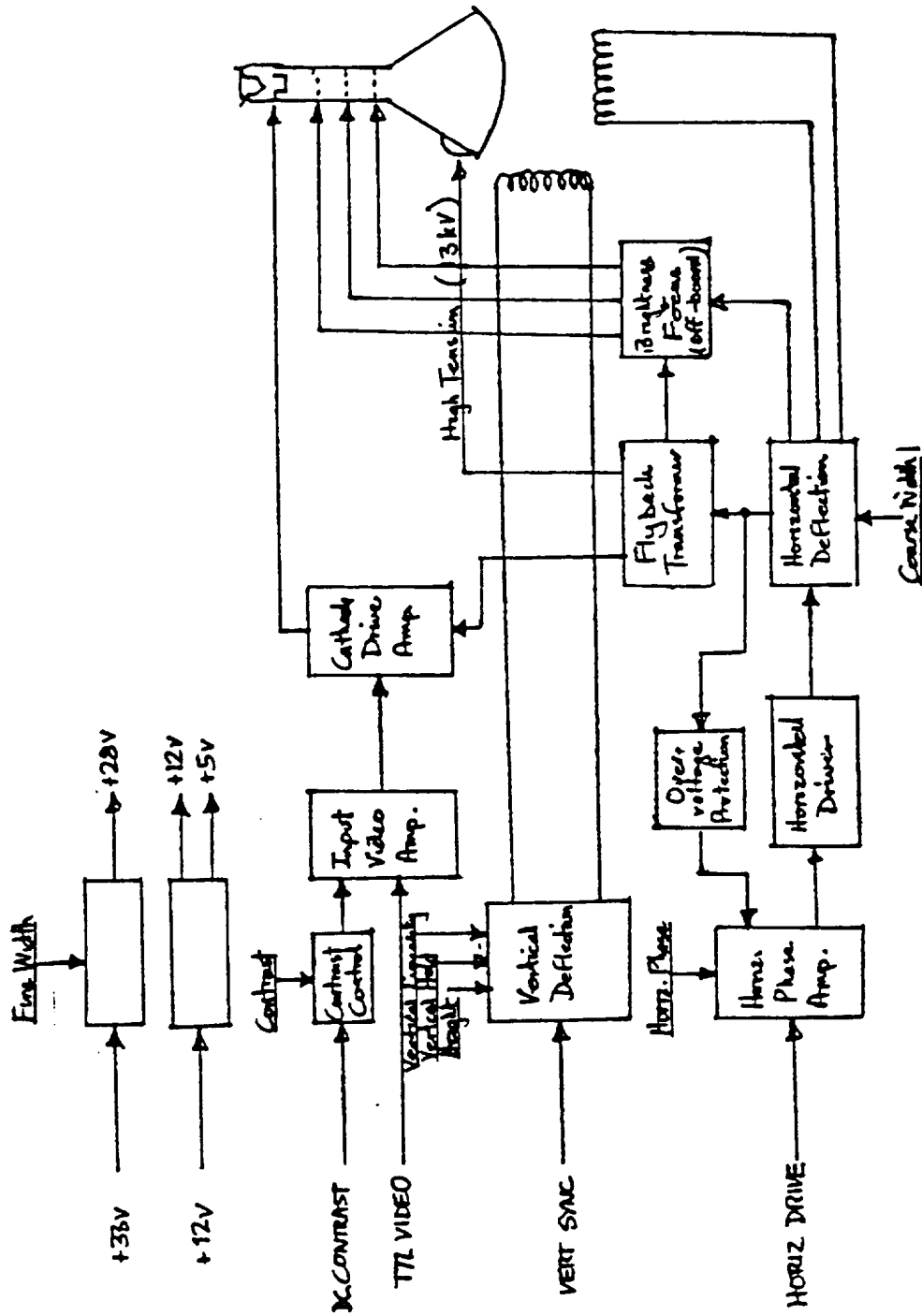


Figure 7-1. Video Board Block Diagram

7-2b

7.2.1 The +12 VDC and +5 VDC Supply

The +12 VDC input is a regulated voltage from the power supply. It is applied to pin P of the connector and is used to provide the following:

- * Power to the +5 VDC regulator
- * Power for the CRT filament
- * Collector supply to transistor Q8.

The +5 V regulator consists of the current-limiting resistor R4, the 5.1 V zener diode CR1, and the filter capacitor C3. This supply is used to provide the collector supply of transistor Q7 and also to provide base-bias for Q2. The current provided by the +5 VDC supply is on the order of 30 milliamps.

7.2.2 The +33 VDC Supply

The +33 VDC input is an semi-regulated voltage provided by the power supply. It is applied to pin 5 of the connector and is connected directly to the 24 V 3-terminal voltage regulator U1. The regulator can accept voltages in the range +33 to +36 VDC and continue to operate correctly. Voltages below about +32 VDC prevent the regulator from performing properly.

The reference terminal at pin 2 of U1 is biased above ground by the resistor ladder formed by R1, R2, and R3. Adjustment of the potentiometer R2 results in an output voltage at pin 3 which is 24 V plus the DC voltage on pin 2. The normal voltage range at pin 3 is between +26 and +30 VDC. The function of this adjustment is to provide a fine control of the width of the display on the CRT.

Capacitors C1 and C32 are provided to suppress parasitic oscillations in the regulator. C2 acts as a storage capacitor for the load.

The regulated +28 VDC, nominal, provided by the supply provides power for the rest of the video board and the CRT.

7.3 The Video-Amplifier Circuit

The function of the video-amplifier circuit is to take the serial TTL data provided by the processor board and convert the digital information into black, logical 0, or white, logical 1, pixels on the screen by controlling

the cathode emission in the CRT.

7.3.1 Video-Data Input and Contrast Control

TTL-level video data are presented to the video board on pin 1 of the connector. It is impressed on the base of transistor Q6 by way of the current-limiting resistor R51. Resistors R51 and R52 form a voltage-divider network to increase the noise-rejection of Q6, which acts as a high-speed switch. The collector of Q6 is therefore at ground or at a DC level, depending on the digital state of the TTL input.

The actual DC voltage level is controlled by the contrast control circuitry. The programmed contrast DC level is provided by circuitry on the I/O board. Refer to Chapter 6 for details of this signal. Potentiometer R5 provides manual adjustment of the level actually presented to the emitter-follower amplifier formed by transistor Q1. Resistor R6 and capacitor C4 make up a low-pass filter that provides smoothing of the incoming DC contrast level.

Transistor Q1 is connected as an emitter-follower in order to provide the high current required to drive the low impedance of R8. The higher the voltage on R8, the larger the contrast between black and white in the final pixel on the CRT.

Note that there are no gray levels in the Lisa video circuitry. Gray tones can be generated by pixel interleaving under software control. The details of this lie outside the scope of this manual.

7.3.2 Cathode Drive Circuit

The collector output of transistor Q6 is passed on to the base of the stacked transistor pair Q2/Q3. The advantage of this circuit is that it combines the advantages of the high gain of Q3 with the ability to withstand high voltages of Q2. Capacitor C6 and resistor R11 are used for high-frequency peaking. Resistor R10 prevents transistor Q2 from going into cutoff when the screen is blank.

The collector load for Q2 consists of the peaking coil L1 and collector load resistor R14, with R13 providing a shunt to damp L1. The collector voltage on Q2 is dependent on the polarity of the pixel being displayed. For black, it is about +60 VDC, while for white it is from 10 to 30 V lower. The

exact voltage level for white depends on the setting of the contrast R5 and the input DC contrast level at pin B on the board control circuit.

The flyback transformer assembly at B-2 of the schematic provides a +60 VDC power source at pin 2 on connector P-3. This is filtered by the storage capacitor C8. Capacitor C7 and diode CR3 form a decoupling network, which ensures that the beam current to the cathode is removed when the Lisa is turned off. This is known as a "spot-killer" and prevents phosphor burn at one point on the screen.

The output of Q2 is passed through the 220 ohm arc-protecting resistor in the cathode lead. This prevents any arcing voltages in the tube from reaching the video amplifier circuitry. Diode CR2 is normally reverse-biased. In the case of an arc occurring in the CRT, this shunts the high-voltage on the lead, acting as an arc-suppressor. The lead connects to pin 2, cathode, of the CRT itself.

7.4 Vertical Deflection Circuit

The vertical deflection circuit positions the horizontal scan of the CRT at the appropriate position in the vertical axis. It is shown in the left center part of the schematic, and consists largely of integrated circuit U2 and its associated components.

Vertical synchronization pulses are provided by the processor board on pin A of the connector. This TTL signal is passed through coupling capacitor C9 and current-limiting resistor R17. The resulting signal pulses are fed into the input of the TDA 1170 at pin 8.

7.4.1 Vertical Deflection Oscillator

The resistor/capacitor (RC) network formed by C10 and R19/R20 provides a timing period for the oscillator internal to U2. Potentiometer R19 enables the period to be varied into synchronization with the periodic screen refresh. This acts as a vertical hold. The network connects to pins 6 and 9 of U2.

7.4.2 Vertical Voltage Amplifier

Internal to U2 is a circuit used to control the amplitude of the vertical deflection.

The gain of this amplifier is controlled by the amount of current sunk to ground from pin 7 of U2. This is a function of the resistance provided by R21 and R22. Potentiometer R22 allows this value to be varied; this adjusts the amplitude of the vertical saw-tooth voltage and thus the physical height of the display on the CRT.

The voltage amplifier output is present on pin 1 of U2. It is utilized in two distinct places:

1. As an input to the feedback network formed by R31, R32, C15, and C16. This controls the linearity of the sawtooth waveform that is output at pin 1. This can be adjusted by potentiometer R31. The network feeds back to pin 12 of U2.
2. As an input to the power amplifier stage through summing resistor R29 to pin 10 of U2.

7.4.3 Vertical Power Amplifier

Input to the power amplifier is at pin 10. The amplified output is available at pin 4 of U2. The output signal follows four paths:

1. It is fed back into the power amplifier via C14 and R27 to limit the high-frequency response and to prevent parasitic oscillations.
2. It is passed through the vertical deflection coils via pins 1 and 2 of connector P1 and is passed to ground via resistor R33 and capacitor C19.
3. It passes through the snubbing network R25 and R17 to ground. The circuit is in shunt with the deflector coils and prevents any ringing effects in the coils themselves.
4. It takes the signal DC component, sampled by R26 and filtered by C18, and passes it on to the summing resistor R28, and so to the amplifier input signal on pin 10. This signal is used to establish the DC operating point of the power amplifier to ensure DC stability.

AC current passing through the deflection coils is

sampled across R33, fed through summing resistor R30, and also presented as a component of the input signal on pin 10. This controls the AC voltage gain of the power amplifier and enhances AC stability.

7.4.4 Bootstrap Circuit

The power input to U2 is pin 2, which should have a DC voltage between +11 and +16 VDC. This is provided by the voltage drop from +28 V, which in turn is provided by R24 with storage capacitor C12. This voltage is also used to provide the collector supply for the emitter-follower circuit of Q1 in the video-amplifier section.

Part of the output signal of the power amplifier, presented at pin 4 of U2, is also presented at pin 5. This forces pin 5 above the DC input voltage at pin 2 and reverse-biases CR5.

This forces pin 3 above the DC input voltage because of the charge stored in C11.

7.5 Horizontal Deflection Circuits

The horizontal deflection circuits provide the timing and control of the sweep of the beam across the CRT in the horizontal direction.

The horizontal frequency of the Lisa video circuit is approximately 22.7 KHz.

7.5.1 Horizontal Input Circuit

The horizontal drive pulse is a TTL signal provided by the processor board and presented to the video board on pin C of the connector.

Summing resistor R53 presents the signal to Q7, which operates as an adjusted Miller integrator. Adjustment is achieved by controlling the amount of feedback to the input by way of the horizontal phase-control potentiometer R34. Feedback to the base of Q7 is by way of resistor R36 and the Miller capacitor C20.

This circuit controls the amount of rise and fall time in the output signal by means of the Miller effect. This controls the switching point of Q8 in time, which operates as a high-speed saturated switch.

7.5.2 Horizontal Sweep Amplifier

The output of Q8 is used to drive the base of the horizontal driver transistor Q4. The output of Q4 is in turn coupled to the base of the horizontal output transistor Q5 by way of the coupling transformer T1 and the base-current limiting resistor R45.

The RC network formed by R41 and C24 is used to control the damping across the primary windings of T1. Similarly, R44 is used to damp the secondary windings.

Power for the driver stage of the amplifier is derived from the +28 VDC supply via the decoupling network formed by R39 and C23.

7.5.3 Horizontal Deflection

Transistor Q5 turns off when the base voltage goes negative. When this occurs, the stored current in the horizontal flyback transformer and the horizontal deflection coils collapses. This causes the collector voltage of Q5 to rise to approximately 280 V. The rate of rise is controlled by the timing capacitor C25, which lies between the collector of Q5 and ground. Diode CR9 is used as a damper to prevent the collector of Q5 from going negative by passing the negative half of the current cycle to ground.

Energy is coupled out of the horizontal circuit by way of the flat-faced correction capacitor C26. Current is then passed through the horizontal deflection coils, through the horizontal linearity coil L2, and to ground. Coarse picture width is controlled by varying the inductance of L3, which is in parallel with the deflection coils.

Coil L2 increases the linear current ramp through the deflection coils. A magnet in the coil is used to bias the coil-1 in one direction. As current is passed, this adds to or subtracts from the magnetic bias. This in turn alters the value of the inductor. R46 is used to damp any high-frequency oscillation within the horizontal deflection coil circuit.

7.5.4 Horizontal Flyback

The flyback transformer also connects to the horizontal output transistor Q5. It is used to step the voltage on the collector of Q5 either up or down.

This is used to generate the high-voltage supply for the CRT at 13K VDC, the 60 VDC supply for the video amplifier and also +600 VDC for the G2 voltage on pin 6 in the CRT. It also provides power for the brightness and focus circuit, which is physically located on the power supply board in order that the controls are available to the operator of the Lisa.

Power input to the flyback assembly comes from the +28 VDC supply on pin 3, violet.

A portion of the horizontal output signal is coupled by C27 to R47 and CR10. This provides a -100 VDC source to operate the brightness and focus circuits.

7.5.5 Overvoltage Crowbar

The voltage at the collector of Q5 is sampled by the precision divider formed by R42 and R43. This is fed through the peak-detector circuit formed by CR8 and C22 and placed on the cathode of CR7. If the voltage on the collector of Q5 should rise above acceptable limits, CR7 conducts and provides a forward bias on SCR CR6. This latches CR6 on, shunting the collector supply of Q8 to ground. It also turns the horizontal circuits off and avoids a damaging high voltage on Q5. SCR CR6 remains in this condition until power is removed from the Lisa. It also prevents excessive voltage to the CRT, thus keeping it within the safe X-ray rating of the tube.

7.5.6 Brightness and Focus

The control circuits for these two functions are logically a part of the horizontal deflection circuit, but are physically a part of the Lisa power supply for ease of operator access to these controls.

The +600 VDC high-voltage power for these circuits is provided by the components CR11, R48, and C33 from the secondary windings of the flyback transformer. The negative voltage comes from

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

components C27, R47, and CR10.

The brightness of the CRT is controlled by adjustment of the DC voltage on pin 1, the control grid, of the CRT. This can vary from +12 to -38 VDC with respect to ground, and is adjusted by means of the 2 V megohm resistor marked Brightness.

The focus is a voltage placed on pin 7 of the CRT. It can vary between -100 and +300 VDC, depending on the adjustment of the 2 megohm resistor marked Focus.

CHAPTER 8. USER INTERFACES

The Lisa uses the CRT and a speaker to communicate with the user. The user can communicate with the Lisa by using the mouse and keyboard. In addition, there is a video jack available on the motherboard at the back of the Lisa that supplies a composite video signal and can be used to drive a secondary CRT.

8.1 The CRT

The CRT is controlled by a combination of Lisa software and hardware elements on both the processor and video boards. Refer to section 4.5 and to Chapter 7 for a discussion of the hardware.

8.2 The Keyboard

The 76-key Lisa keyboard is a detachable assembly that contains a full key-set and function keys. It is connected to the Lisa by a standard 1/4 inch stereo phone jack, located above the on-off button on the front of the cabinet. The standard keyboard layout, North American, is shown in Figure 8-1. Appendix H contains all available Lisa keyboard layouts.

8.2.1 Keyboard Logic

The keyboard logic is shown in schematic 050-4001 in Appendix E. It operates under control of the COPS device shown on the schematic at C-1.

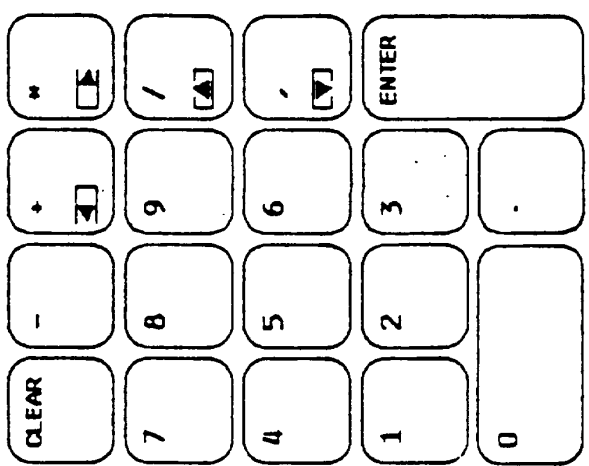
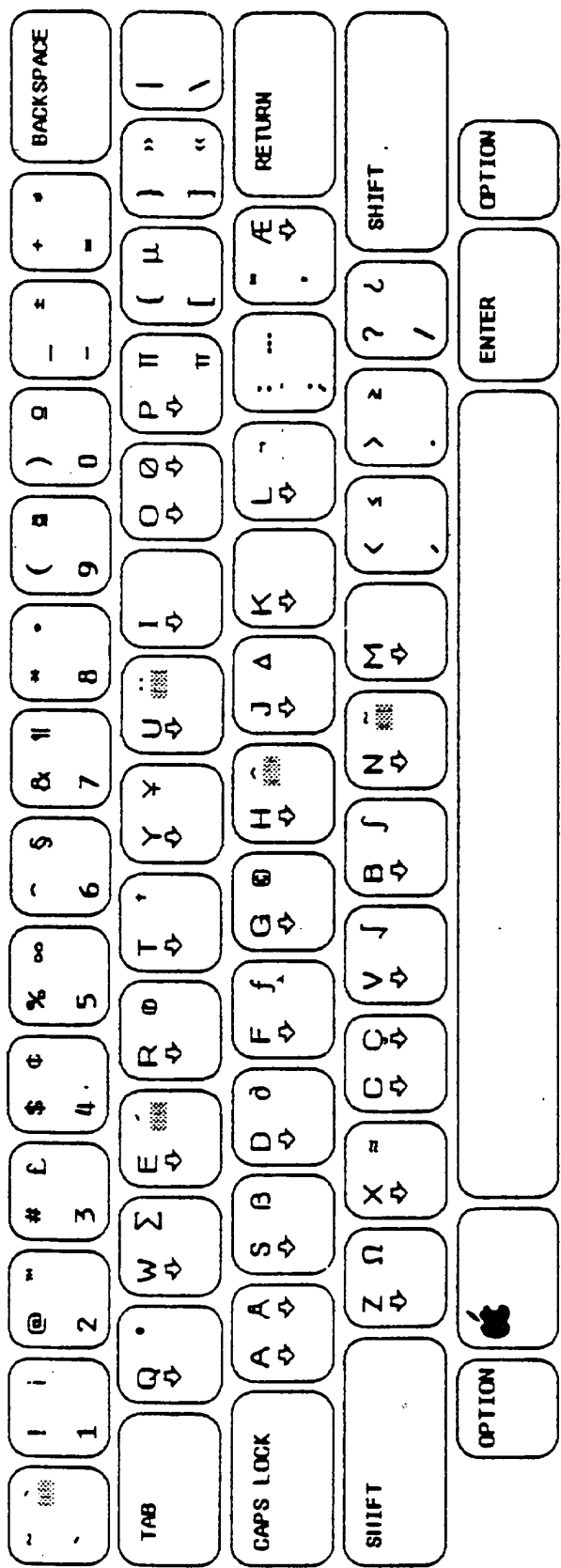
The COPS is identical to that found in the keyboard control logic on the I/O board. Refer to section 6.5 for details of this. The same routines are present in both devices. Only the routines that apply to the location of the device are used.

Figure 8-1. Standard Keyboard Layout

The keys interface to five 4067 16-to-1 multiplexer devices. The COPS polls these in an upper and lower bank by means of the SK signal and the LS03 gate at C-2. The configuration of the COPS D0-D3 outputs defines which of the sixteen switches attached to each device is being selected.

TN / 8 1-JV, 82

US NEW Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

- Left
- Right
- Up
- Down
- Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed.
- Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock.
- OPTION Selects Alternate Keyboard

Left: Primary keyboard | Right: Alternate keyboard

P Upper: Shifted
π Lower: Unshifted

Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- a. If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- b. If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

0.76

The state of the switches in the bank of 4067 devices is presented to the COPS on the three lines G1-G3. The lower bank uses all three but the upper bank uses only G2 and G3.

Key data are passed to the Lisa in serial form from the S0 output of the COPS via the LS03 gates at B-1 and pin 1 of the Molex connector. Synchronization pulses from the Lisa are also input to the keyboard on pin 1 and passed to the G0 input of the COPS via the final LS03 gate at B-1.

8.2.2 Keyboard Timing

Transfer of data from the keyboard to the Lisa is performed when the keyboard controller initiates it. This is shown in Figure 6-13. The keycodes are discussed in section 2.4.5.

Data transfer is initiated when the keyboard-data line is pulled low by the Lisa for approximately 20 microseconds. The keyboard COPS senses the leading and trailing edges of this SYNC pulse and transmits an ACK pulse to indicate to the keyboard controller that data are about to be transferred.

A data byte that specifies the key is transferred in a lower and upper nibble as shown in Figure 8-2. The byte is interpreted as a key and a polarity, up or down, by the keyboard controller.

If no data are present in the keyboard COPS, no ACK pulse is sent. The interface becomes quiescent until the next SYNC pulse.

8.2.3 Keyboard Interface

The keyboard interface to the Lisa consists of a 3-wire shielded cable which is terminated by a 3-pin Molex connector attached to the keyboard PCB at one end and a standard 1/4 inch stereo phone jack plug at the other. This arrangement is shown in Figure 8-2.

Figure 8-2. Keyboard Interface

8.3 The Mouse

The mouse is an electromechanical device that provides communication with the Lisa software in addition to the keyboard. It consists of a rolling ball arrangement on the under side and a plastic cover with a button on the top. A cable connects the mouse with the 9-pin DB connector in the center of the motherboard at the back of the Lisa.

The specific functions of the mouse depend on the software currently running. However, the two controls on the mouse provide the same general function in all cases:

- * Rolling the mouse around a flat surface moves a cursor around the screen, and
- * Pressing the button on top of the mouse selects the item or software function at the cursor location.

8.3.1 Internal Components

The internal components of the mouse consist basically of a switch and two directional wheels. One directional wheel detects motion forward and

back, corresponding to up and down on the screen, while the other detects motion left and right.

Each wheel has a number of slots cut around the rim. These pass two photoelectric diode assemblies as the mouse is moved in that axis and the wheel turns. The two diode assemblies produce a series of pulses to the mouse interface on the I/O board.

The relationship of one set of pulses to the other indicates the polarity of the direction in which the mouse is moving, and the number of pulses is proportional to the distance travelled. Refer to Figure 8-3, which illustrates this.

8.3.2 The Mouse Interface

The mouse interface is briefly described in section 3.5. The 9-pin DB connector is located in the middle of the connector panel at the back of the Lisa. Refer to Figure 3-11 for the connector layout.

Only SWITCH \emptyset is operational in the mouse. Each pair of the LEFT/RIGHT and UP/DOWN inputs pulses, as shown in Figure 8-3, when the mouse moves one increment in that direction. One increment equals a constant unit of movement in that direction on the flat surface.

Figure 8-3. Mouse Movement Waveforms

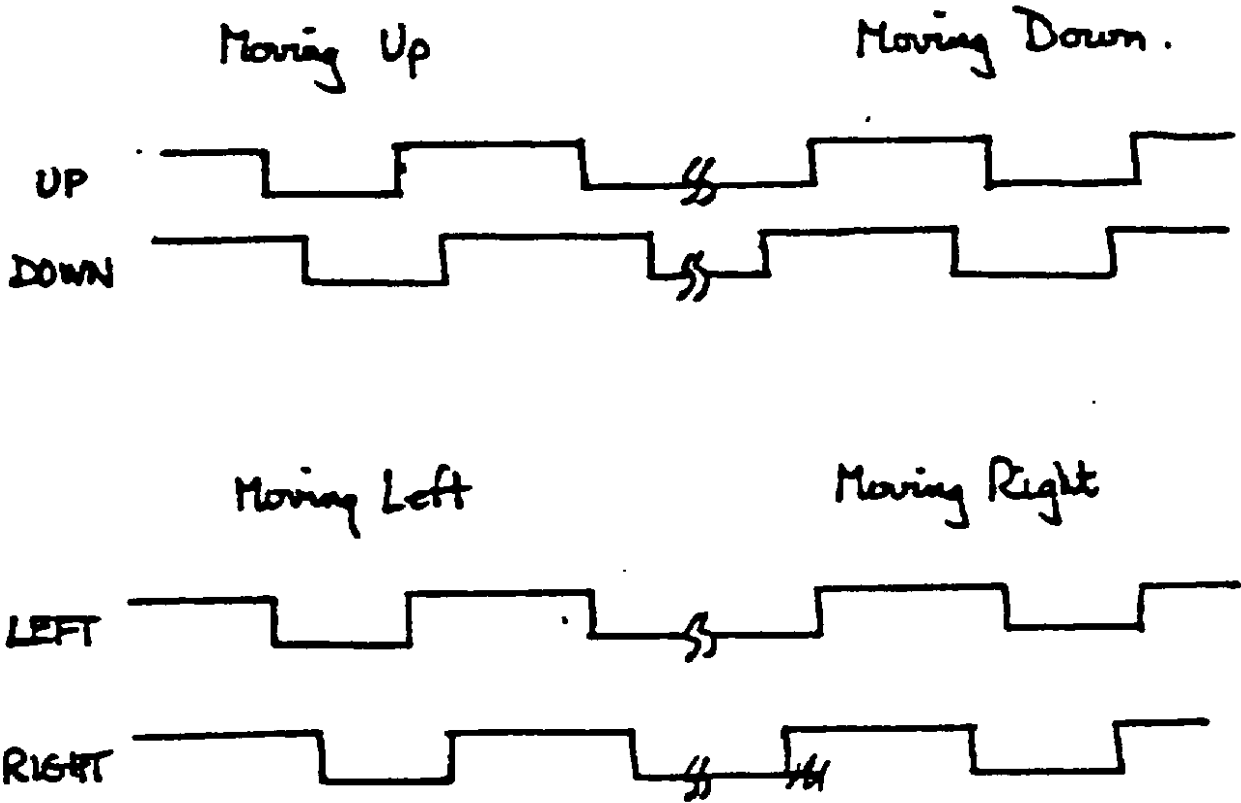


Figure 8-3. Mouse Movement Waveforms

8-5b

8.4 Other User Controls

Several user-oriented features of the Lisa are described elsewhere in this manual in more detail but are mentioned here for convenience.

8.4.1 The On-Off Switch

The on-off switch is located on the front of the cabinet, in the lower-right corner. Pressing this switch when the Lisa is off sends power to all parts of the Lisa under control of the boot software.

Pressing this switch when the Lisa is on causes an interrupt to software which in turn cleans up its environments and then ejects any floppy disks in use. The Lisa is then turned off under software control. This turns off everything except the control COPS, which handles the RTC and power-on control. The control COPS receives its power from a standby supply in the power supply. Refer to section 10.5 for details.

Whenever the Lisa is isolated from a power source, perhaps because the Lisa is disconnected or the power fails, a self-recharging battery maintains the voltages necessary to operate the standby supply voltages for a period up to approximately 10 hours. The battery is automatically recharged whenever the Lisa is turned on. Refer to section 6.7 for a discussion of this.

8.4.2 The RESET Switch

The RESET switch is located on the motherboard at the back of the Lisa, next to the video connector. RESET is used to restart the Lisa in the event that an unrecoverable error has put the Lisa in an undefined state. This should never be activated during normal processing or loss of data almost certainly results. The reset switch is shown at location C-2 on the motherboard logic schematic 050-4013 in Appendix G.

8.4.3 The Speaker

The built-in speaker can be used to provide an audible warning to the user. It is controlled by logic on the I/O board under software control for

volume and tone. Refer to section 6.7 for a discussion of speaker control.

8.4.4 The Composite Video Output

The composite video output is available on the J10 video jack at the back of the motherboard. The circuit is located on the motherboard and uses the CVOUT and VID signal outputs from the processor board. Refer to section 4.5. The composite video signal is output to the jack via resistor R2.

The logic is shown on schematic 050-4013 in area C-2. Both the VID and CVOUT signals are effectively ORed to the base of transistor Q2. This controls the amount of current passing through Q2 and consequently through R7, which controls the amount of current passing through Q1.

CHAPTER 9. FLOPPY-DISK DRIVES

The Lisa is equipped with two floppy-disk drives for data file storage. These are located one above the other at the right side of the cabinet. They interface to the Lisa by means of a floppy-disk controller, which is located on the I/O board and is described in section 6.2.

This chapter does not present an exhaustive description of the drive. Refer to other documentation on the disk drive for further details.

9.1 Specifications

Capsule summaries of disk-drive specifications follow.

9.1.1 Media

Disk size 5 1/4 inch
Media qualified double-sided
10,000 FCPI
Track density 62.5 TPI

9.1.2 Speed

Motor speed settle time 150 msec
Motor on time 400 msec
Head settling time 10 msec
Carriage movement . . linear stepper actuator
Spindle rotation DC Motor

9.1.3 Electrical

+5 VDC standby. 75 mA
+5 VDC running 80 mA
+12 VDC standby 42 mA
+12 VDC running 850 mA
+12 VDC maximum (during motor start) . . 1.6 A
-5 VDC standby 5 mA
-5 VDC running 8 mA

9.1.4 Environmental

See section 3.2, Lisa Specifications.

9.2 Drive Block Diagram

The floppy-disk drive is an assembly that enables 5-1/4 inch flexible diskettes to be used as data storage media. In the Lisa, there are two functionally identical drives controlled by logic on the I/O board.

The drive itself can be thought of as consisting of a number of component blocks, as shown in Figure 9-1. The motors and detectors present in the drive chassis are directly controlled by the digital board, while the head read/write functions are performed by the analog board under control of the digital board.

Figure 9-1. Drive Block Diagram

9.3 Drive Interface

The interface to the drives is performed in the Lisa by signals provided on motherboard connector J1, under control of the I/O board's floppy-disk controller. Refer to section 6.2.

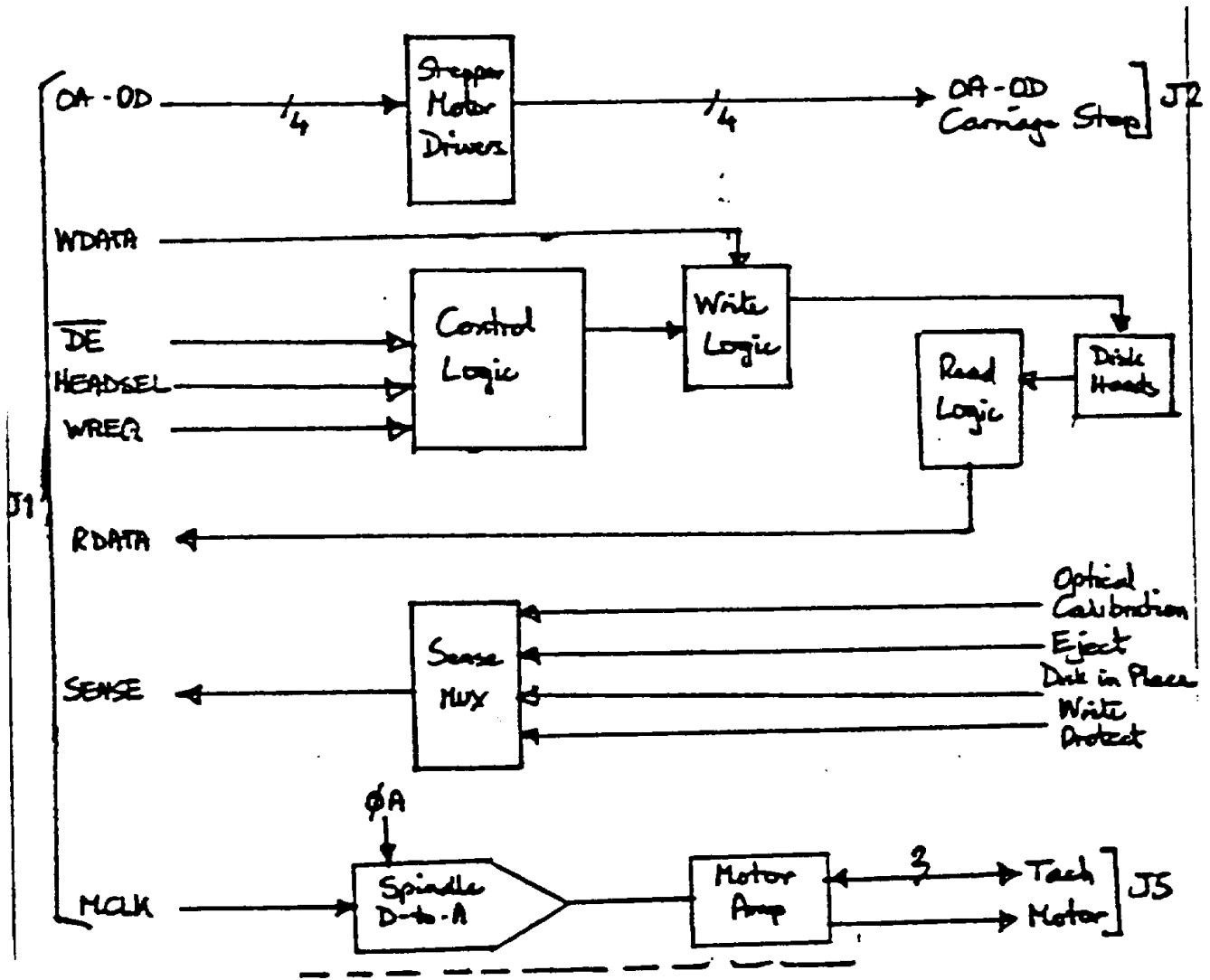


Figure 9-1. Drive Block Diagram

9-2b

9.3.1 Drive-Interface Signals

The interface signals to the drive are shown in Figure 9-2.

| Signal | Pin # | | Signal |
|----------|-------|----|---------------------------------|
| +12 VDC | 1 | 2 | Phase 0/motor data/sense select |
| +12 VDC | 3 | 4 | Phase 1 |
| +12 VDC | 5 | 6 | Phase 2 |
| +12 VDC | 7 | 8 | Phase 3 |
| Ground | 9 | 10 | Write Data |
| Ground | 11 | 12 | /Write Request |
| Ground | 13 | 14 | Read Data |
| Ground | 15 | 16 | /Drive Select |
| not used | 17 | 18 | Head Select |
| not used | 19 | 20 | Sense |
| +5 VDC | 21 | 22 | Motor Data Clock |
| +5 VDC | 23 | 24 | /IRQ |
| +5 VDC | 25 | 26 | not used |

Figure 9-2. Drive-Interface Signals

9.3.2 Drive-Interface Timing

The density of data written on the disk is a function of the floppy-disk controller and the capacity of the medium to store bit transitions. Refer to sections 6.2 and 6.3 for a discussion of controller operation.

Timing of the stepper motor that controls head movement is defined by the four phase lines on the interface. These are manipulated to move the heads forward or backwards.

In order to avoid inaccurate head positioning due to mechanical tolerances in the carriage mechanism, all seeks finish with a final motion in a direction towards the optical calibration point. Note that this means that the upper head is moving away from the spindle while the lower is moving towards it. Refer to Figure 6-11.

In order to overcome the inertia during carriage

acceleration and deceleration, three different periods are employed between speed transitions on the phi lines. This can be seen in Figure 9-3.

Figure 9-3. Carriage Movement Timing

In the quiescent state, all four phase lines are low. Motion is begun by asserting two of the lines. In the forward direction, towards the optical calibration point, this would mean phi3 and phi0; in the reverse direction, phi0 and phi1. At the end of the first period, one phase is deasserted and another asserted, as shown in Figure 9-3. Note that one phase remains on while others are being changed.

When the carriage is at the required position, phi0 is always the last phase to remain asserted alone for the final period before all phases are again deasserted and the carriage is at rest.

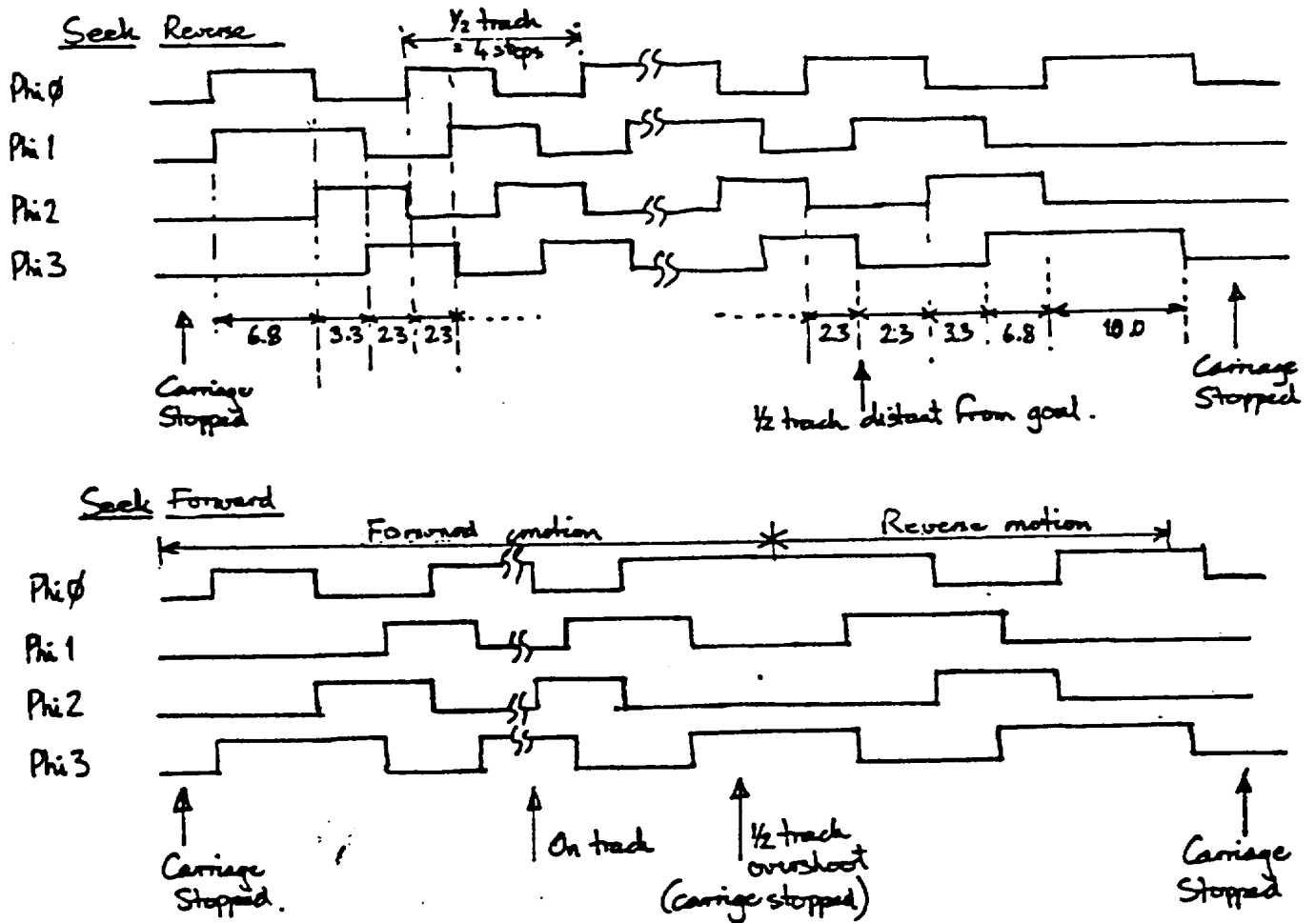


Figure 9-3. Carriage Movement Timing

9-4b

Note that for a seek in the reverse direction, the carriage is brought to a halt four steps beyond the desired position, and then a seek forward of four steps is made to restore the head to the center-track position. This operation is known as overshoot.

Each step corresponds to 1/8th of a track. Thus all tracks are eight steps apart. In the case of difficulty in reading data from the required track, the floppy-disk controller attempts to offset by 1/8th track steps to allow for misalignment.

The optical disk calibration signal is available to the controller as an aid in overcoming differences in mechanical alignment between disks. It provides an accurate radial reference point from which seeks can be made. This is also known as the recalibrate function.

9.4 Basic Drive Operation

The drive is capable of performing a number of operations under control of the signals on the drive interface. The operations are described in following subsections.

9.4.1 Inserting and Removing Disks

When a floppy disk is inserted in the drive, the eject mechanism is armed and a switch is activated to indicate that the disk is in place. This can be detected by the controller on the STATUS signal line, pin 20, if both the HEADSEL, pin 18, and the phi0, pin 2, are asserted by the controller.

Pressing the eject button on the front of the drive causes a line to be asserted in the drive. This state can be detected on the STATUS line by holding the HEADSEL signal asserted with the phi0 signal deasserted.

The controller should then move the heads away from the disk until the disk-in-place signal becomes deasserted. At this point, the heads should be moved nine tracks further in order to activate and reset the eject mechanism.

9.4.2 Loading Disk Heads

When a disk is detected in the drive, the disk heads can be loaded. This is performed in the sequence below. Namely, the:

- * Drive motor is activated and brought up to speed,
- * Centering cone is pressed into the disk hole,
- * Spindle begins rotating,
- * Disk is clamped to the spindle,
- * Heads are moved inward towards track 45,
- * Head load mechanism presses the heads against the disk surfaces.

The steps in the above sequence are performed mechanically when the carriage is being moved to bring the heads over the disk surface. The spindle begins to rotate when clock pulses are presented to the spindle motor control via the MCLK line on pin 22.

The spindle is already spinning before being brought into contact with the disk. The clamper forces the disk to be seated centrally on the spindle with the rotation of the spindle assisting in this.

The heads are moved by pulsing, in the correct sequence, the four control lines of the stepper motor:

- * phi0, pin 2
- * phi1, pin 4
- * phi2, pin 6
- * phi3, pin 8.

9.4.3 Positioning Heads

The two read/write heads in the drive are mounted on a single carriage that is driven by a head positioning actuator. This consists of a linear stepper motor and lead screw.

This mechanism not only provides head-to-track positioning but also actuates a disk clamping and unclamping mechanism. The mechanism clamps the disk

as the heads are moved into the reading surface and unclamps it as the heads are moved clear of the surface.

9.4.4 Data Read/Write

The ceramic heads in the drive operate in direct contact with the disk surfaces. Each head is a single element with straddle erase elements to clear the inter-track gap.

During a read operation, the heads transform the polarity reversals on the disk surface into a stream of analog pulses. These are converted to serial digital data and presented to the controller as the RDATA signal on pin 14. It is the function of the controller to interpret this data.

The write circuitry takes the serial digital data presented on the WDATA line, pin 10, by the controller and converts it to the correct analog pulses for the write heads.

Data are written to whichever head is currently selected, depending on the write protection condition of the disk currently in place. The controller senses the write protection condition of a disk by deasserting both the HEADSEL and A0 signals before polling the SENSE line.

The write-protect sense condition informs the controller that the disk currently inserted has its write-protect slot uncovered. There is a hardware protection circuit in the drive to inhibit writing to a disk that is write-protected. It is a function of the controller to decide whether or not the disk will be written to. Currently, the floppy-disk controller does not write to a protected disk.

CHAPTER 10. POWER SUPPLY

The power supply is a flyback-type switcher supply. The circuit diagram is shown in schematic 050-4011, which can be found in Appendix F. The supply provides the power levels and voltages shown in Figure 10-1.

| Voltage | Variance | Current |
|----------|-------------------------|----------------|
| + 5 V | +/-5% (5.25 V/4.76 V) | 4.00 to 8.00 A |
| +12 V | +/-8% (13.0 V/11.1 V) | 0.35 to 2.00 A |
| +33 V | +36 V Max. +32 V Min. | 0.30 to 0.70 A |
| - 5 V | +/-10% (-5.5 V/-4.5 V) | 0.00 to 0.20 A |
| -12 V | +/-10% (-13.2 V/11.8 V) | 0.01 to 0.20 A |
| +5 VSTBY | +/-5% (5.25 V/4.75 V) | 0.00 to 0.10 A |

NOTE: The standby +5 V is not switched off by the on-off signal.

Figure 10-1. Supply Current Output

In addition to the main power supply, an auxiliary standby supply is required. The standby supply provides the minimal +5 V power required to run the soft-power-on and real-time clock circuitry while the Lisa is in a power-off condition.

The focus and brightness controls for the CRT are located on the power supply and are accessible from the back of the Lisa. They are placed here for the user's convenience; there are no internal electrical connections between these controls and the power supply proper. All power output lines are fully isolated from the input AC power by means of transformers or opto-isolators.

10.1 Power Supply Block Diagram

The Lisa power supply consists of the following major components shown in Figure 10-2:

- * AC input circuitry
- * Flyback oscillator
- * DC output circuitry
- * Standby power supply
- * Video focus/brightness
- * Front panel control
- * Safety interlock
- * Over-temperature monitor.

As can be seen from Figure 10-2, both conducted and radiated noise generated by the switcher are reduced by the input filter on the AC line. The input AC power is then rectified and filtered before being presented to the main flyback oscillator.

The flyback oscillator operates by storing a controlled amount of energy, in the form of a magnetic field, in the switcher-transformer core during the forward cycle as the core is being charged. During the flyback cycle, the core discharges this energy to the load placed across the secondary windings.

The secondary windings are connected to the secondary rectifier and filter circuits which provide the DC power outputs. These outputs are monitored by a regulator circuit, which senses the voltage level and adjusts the power being provided. In addition, there is a crowbar circuit that shuts the power supply down if the output voltages exceed the preset limits.

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

Figure 10-2. Power Supply Block Diagram

10.2 AC Input Circuits

Refer to schematic 050-4011 in Appendix F. The AC input circuits are shown in the upper left quadrant.

last edited by Pilkington

10-3a

31 May 1983 @noon

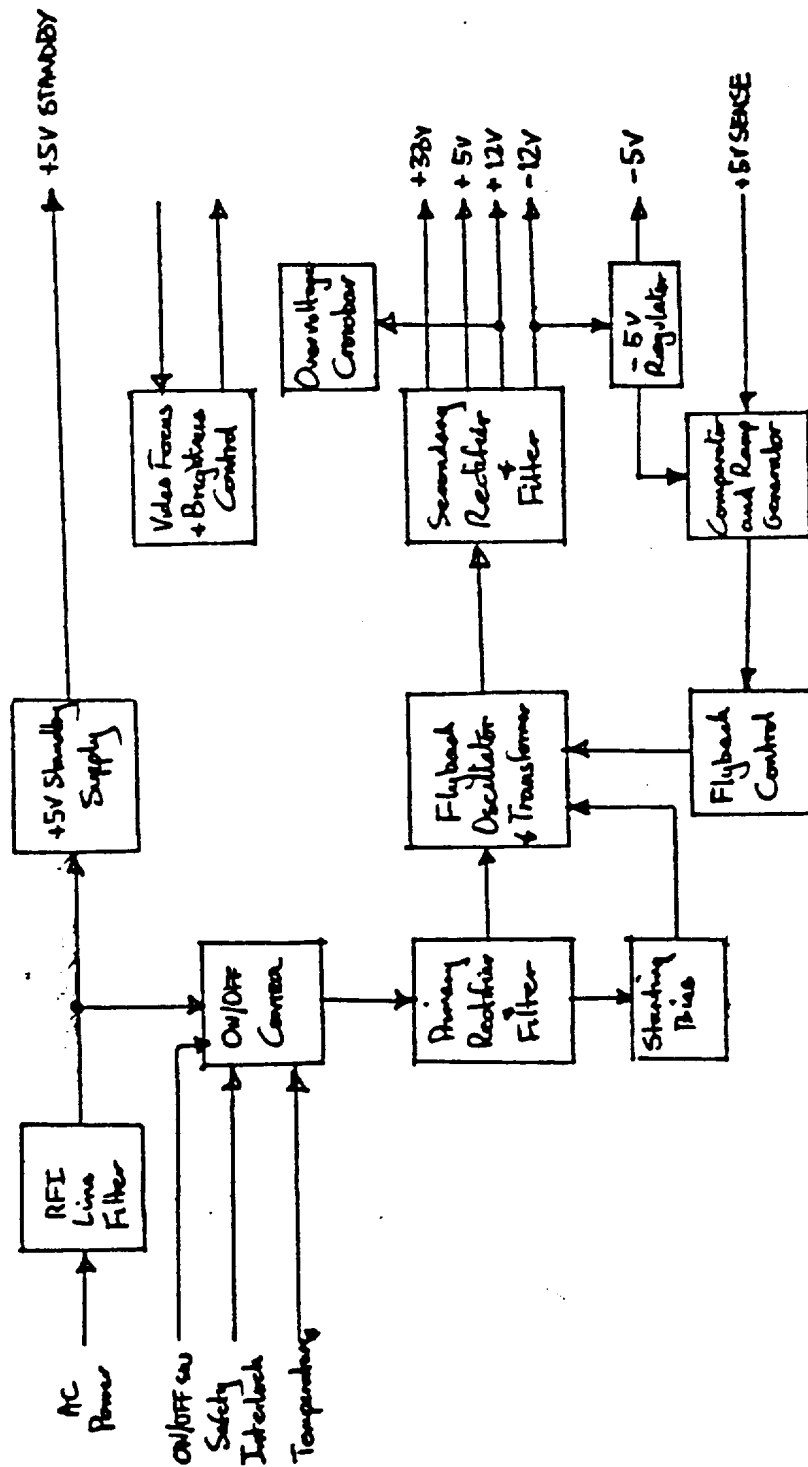


Figure 10-2. Power Supply Block Diagram

10-3b

10.2.1 AC Line Connection

The AC connector P3 supplies power via the power cord and inductor L7 to the J2/P2 connector. This presents the power to the input line filter, which consists of transformer T1, chokes L1 and L2, and capacitors C1, C2, C3 and C4. Thermistor R9 and fusible resistor R8 are provided to limit the inrush current to the power supply.

10.2.2 On-Off Control

Power to the supply is controlled by opto-isolator U3, which controls the switching triac CR2. U3 is provided with +5 V from the standby supply via Q5, which biases a light-emitting diode between pins 1 and 16. Pins 8 and 10 operate as a photosensitive Triac. Power is switched to the main supply via CR2.

Resistor R33 is a temperature-sensitive varistor, which biases Q6. Excessive temperature causes Q6 to draw enough current to ground out pin X and to turn off the supply.

The power supply is switched on by applying a logic 1 level to the base of transistor Q5, causing transistor Q5 to conduct, which grounds pin 1 of U3. The power supply switches on and stays on until this level is removed.

A low level on the base of Q5 keeps the power supply in the OFF condition. This can be achieved by either driving it low via the software on-off or by grounding the safety interlock switch.

Warning: Note that the power supply itself remains powered at all times when the Lisa is connected to an AC power source. Test before touching.

10.2.3 Primary Rectification

The jumper below R9 is used to select the input AC voltage that is being provided. If 110 V is selected, the connection is made to the midpoint of C12 and C13. Using these capacitors and the diodes CR5 and CR6, the input voltage is doubled using half-wave rectification. The DC voltage output from this rectification and filtering is used to charge up the core of transformer T3 through the 84-turn primary winding between pins 23 and 24.

In the case of a 220 VAC line input, this voltage is full-wave rectified, using diodes CR3, CR4, CR5, and CR6. The resulting rectified DC voltage is again smoothed by the filtering capacitors C12 and C13.

Residual voltage that might be stored in the filtering capacitors when the supply is shut OFF is bled to ground via the large resistance provided by R14 and R15 in series.

10.3 The Flyback Oscillator

The focus of the flyback switching oscillator is transistor Q1 and its associated circuitry in the lower left of the schematic. A simplified diagram of the flyback oscillator circuit is shown in Figure 10-3. The points labelled in Figure 10-3 refer to the locations where the waveforms given in the following figures can be observed.

Figure 10-3. Flyback Oscillator Circuit

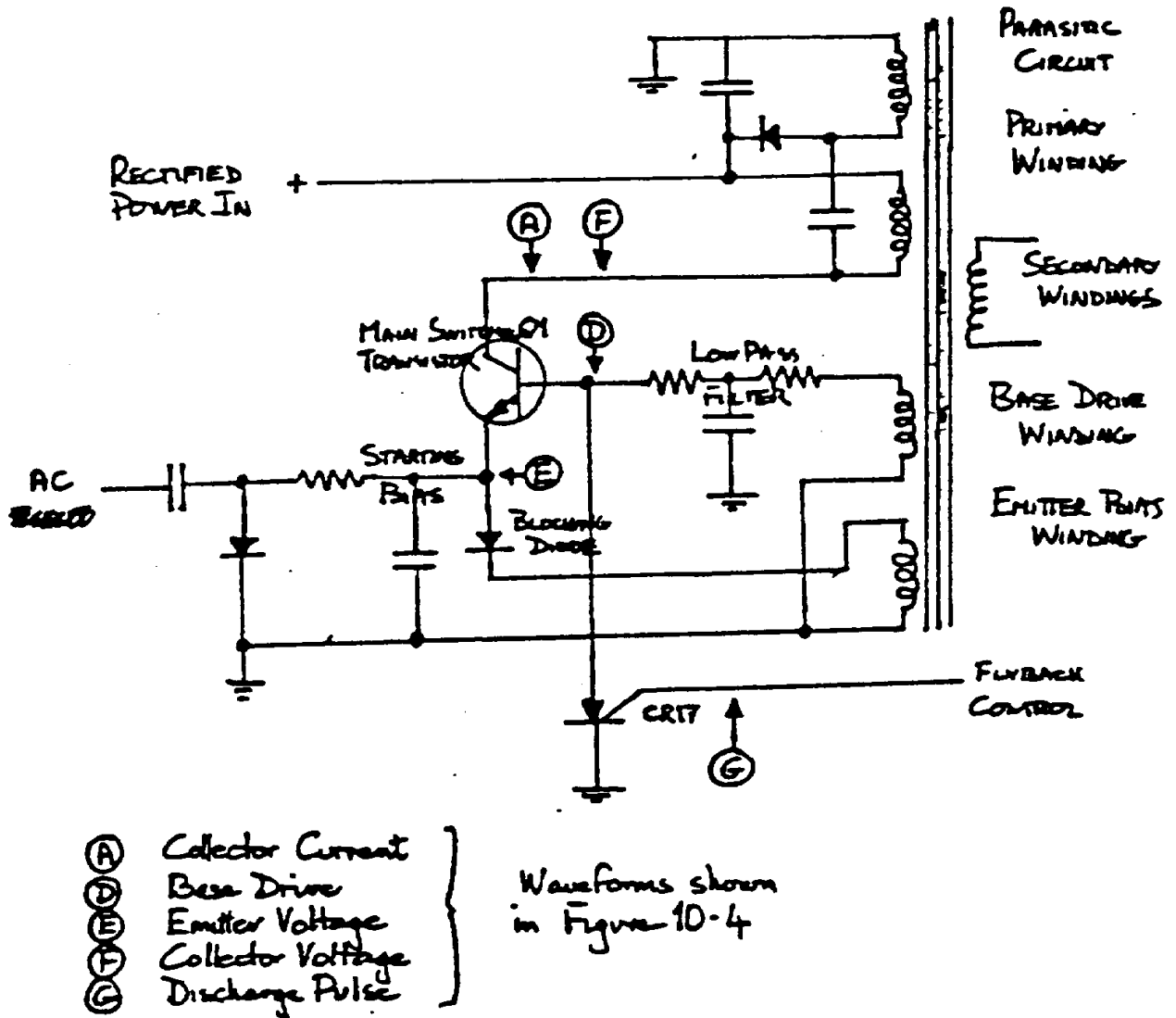


Figure 10-3. Flyback Oscillator Circuit

10.3.1 Flyback Starting Bias

In order for the oscillator to begin to oscillate when power is first applied, the emitter of Q1 must be biased negative with respect to its base. This is done by isolation of the base from the emitter by means of diode CR15.

Approximately 1 milliamp of current flows from the emitter to ground via resistors R20 and R21. This is sufficient to forward bias Q1 enough for it to switch and begin the oscillation cycle.

10.3.2 Flyback Oscillator Operation

Pulse transformer T4 receives a pulse of current each time the regulator circuit saturates. This provides a voltage to the programmable unijunction CR17. When the voltage at pin 2 exceeds that at pin 3, the unijunction operates as an SCR and shorts the input.

This grounds the base of Q1, causing it to switch off. To prevent the transistor from immediately switching on again, C30 holds the emitter positive for a short period of time, assuring a negative base-to-emitter bias.

Since current no longer flows in the collector and the primary windings of T3, the core begins to discharge its energy into the secondary windings that provide the output DC power.

During this time, transistor Q1's emitter continues to be held positive by the charge in C31, which is discharging through R40/R41 and CR15 to ground via the primary winding 28/22.

Once this charge has leaked away, the current on C25 biases the emitter negative again to provide a starting bias, as explained in Subsection 10.3.1 above, and transistor Q1 begins to conduct. This causes current to flow through the collector and the primary winding 23/24, which induces a magnetic field in the transformer T3 core.

The waveforms at several critical points in the flyback section are shown in Figure 10-4. The letters correspond to the positions where these can be observed.

The parasitic winding of transformer T3 provided by the primary 25/26 is used in conjunction with CR12,

CR23, and C23 to minimize high-voltage transients, which can be generated in T3 and could damage Q1.

Figure 10-4. Flyback Oscillator Waveforms

10.3.3 Flyback Control Circuit

The amount of power output by the supply is a function of the amount of power that is permitted to be stored in the core before the discharge pulse

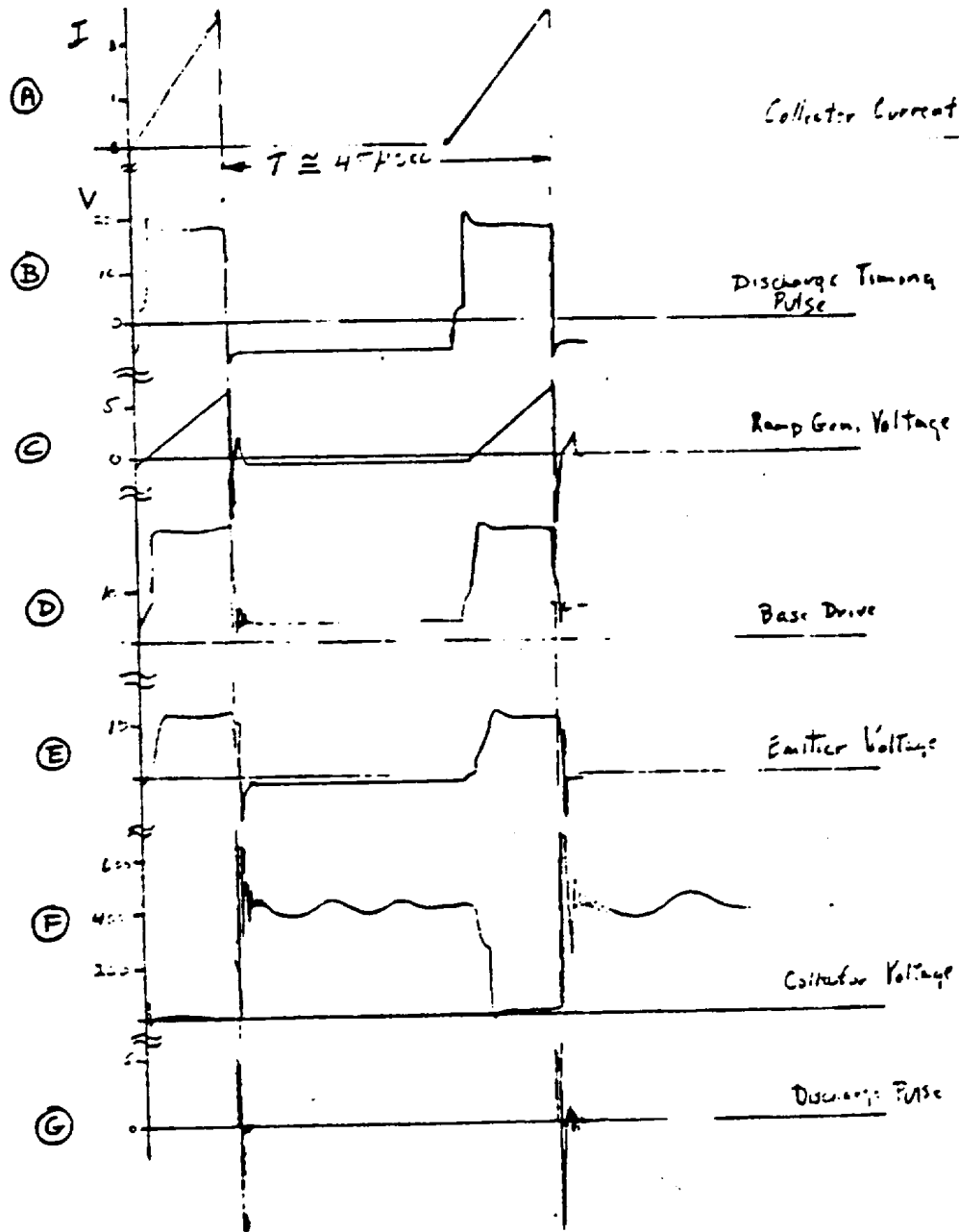


Figure 10-4. Flyback Oscillator Waveforms

10-7b

transfers it to the secondary windings. The discharge pulse is generated by the circuits at the lower right of the schematic. These are shown in block diagram form in Figure 10-5.

Figure 10-5. Flyback Control Block Diagram

The level of the +5 V line is taken as the measure of all voltage levels being presented to their loads, since all voltages are proportional in the switcher-type supply. This is sensed via pin N of the terminal block and presented to the top of the voltage adjustment pot R29 via resistors R26 and R27.

A -5 V reference from U2 is fed through resistor R30 and the temperature compensating diode Q4 to the bottom of R29. When the voltages are in balance, the adjustment tap on R29 has a nominal zero volt bias. Otherwise, a voltage bias is applied to the base of Q3, which operates as a voltage amplifier in conjunction with R25 and R32.

The amplified voltage is presented to the base of Q2 through R28. This permits current to flow in proportion to the voltage applied to its base, Q2, operating as a voltage-controlled current source.

The path provided to the -12 V line via CR19 and R24

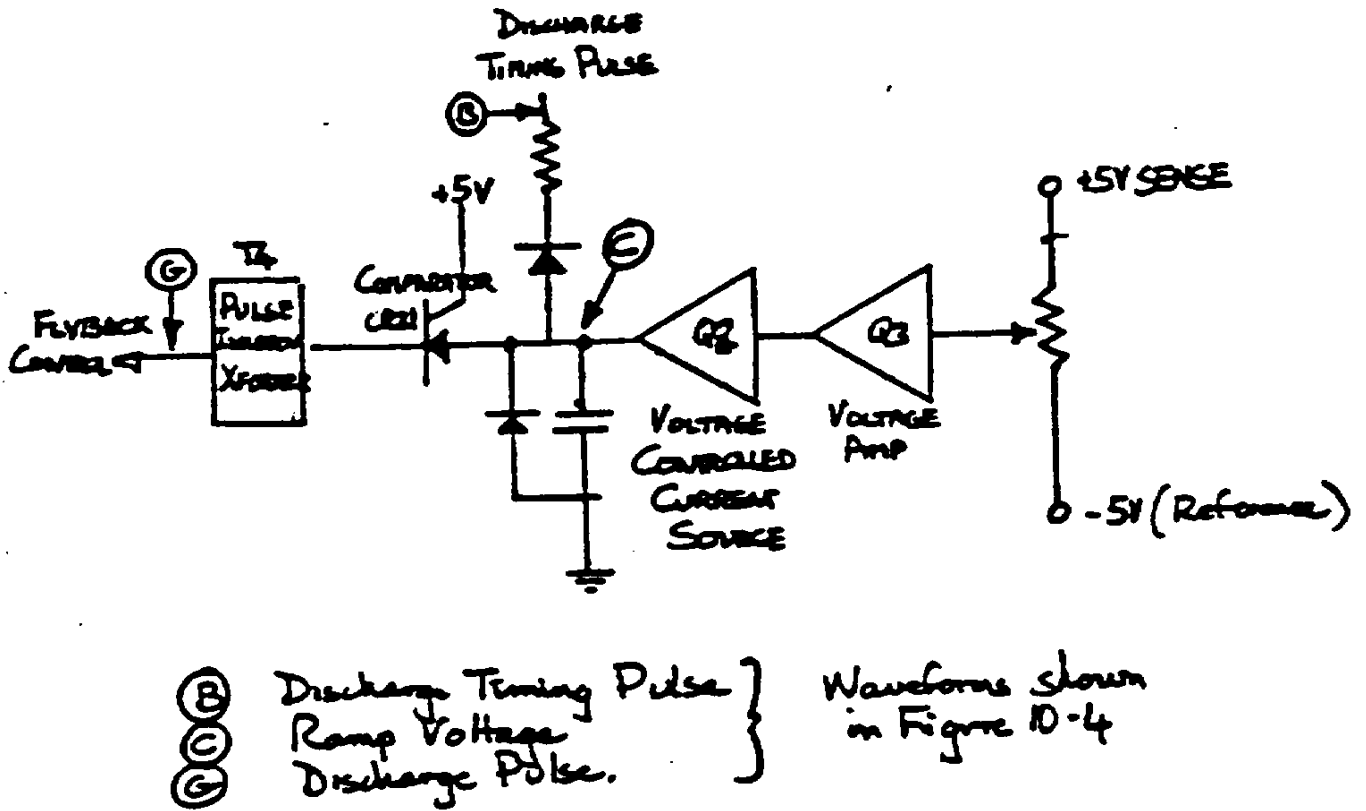


Figure 10-5. Flyback Control Block Diagram

10-8b

causes the voltage on C34 to start up from zero volts at the same time that transistor Q1 in the main flyback circuit is turned on. The voltage at C34 rises at a rate in proportion to the current being presented to it via Q2.

When the voltage reaches the +5 V level presented to pin 2 of programmable unijunction CR21, the junction conducts. This discharges C34 to ground, which generates a pulse through the secondary winding of T4. This pulse then generates a corresponding pulse in the primary windings, which is used to turn Q1 off, as described above.

The result is a sawtooth waveform at C34. The rate of voltage rise is controlled by the error current from the transconductance amplifier. The total energy stored in the switching transformer T3 is controlled by the rate of voltage rise across C34.

10.4 DC Output Circuitry

The DC output circuitry consists of the secondary circuits to the right of the switching transformer T3 in the schematic. The power supply provides five voltages from the main switcher. These are:

+ 5 V
 - 5 V
 +12 V
 -12 V
 +33 V

Of these voltages, the last three originate in their own separate secondary windings. The +5 V supply originates in two windings in parallel, and the -5 V supply is provided by a voltage regulator attached to the -12 V supply.

10.4.1 DC Voltage Outputs

The +33 V supply comes from secondary winding 16/34 on T3, is smoothed by the C9, C10, and L3 network, and is presented on pin D. C11 removes high frequency noise.

The +12 V supply originates in the 20/33 winding, with pin 20 already being biased by the +5 V supply section. It is smoothed by C14, C15, and L4, and presented on pins 5,9,10,E,K, and L. It is also equipped with a crowbar over-voltage protection

circuit, described in subsection 10.4.2. Capacitor C16 removes high-frequency noise on the voltage. The +12 V supply provides the power for the voltage-controlled current source in the oscillator control section. Refer to section 10.3.3.

The +5 V supply is taken from two secondary windings ganged together and passed through the smoothing circuit formed by C18, C19, and C21, with C22 removing high-frequency noise. It is available on pins 11, 12, and M.

The -12 V supply comes from the 17/34 secondary winding of T3 and after smoothing through C27, C28, and L6, it is placed on pin W. The -12 V supply is also used to provide the current being fed through Q2 in the oscillator control circuit; see section 10.3.3.

The -5 V supply is tapped from the -12 V supply by means of the voltage regulator U2. It is smoothed with C24 and presented on pin 19.

Diodes CR7, CR8, CR11, and CR18 prevent reverse power leakage through the transformer during the charging portion of the cycle.

10.4.2 DC Voltage Controls

There are two mechanisms by which the output voltages are monitored in the power supply:

1. Voltages are maintained at the level selected by potentiometer R29 by means of the oscillator control section described in section 10.3.3. Adjustment of the pot raises and lowers all voltages proportionately.
2. Protection for the power supply load is provided by a crowbar circuit attached to the +12 V supply line. The +12 V level is presented to the 12 V zener CR9 through R12. Should the voltage rise enough above +12 V to trigger the diode breakdown, the voltage is applied to pin 3 of the SCR at CR10, causing it to conduct. This shorts the +12 V line to ground, which removes the current source for the oscillator control circuit at Q2. This halts the oscillation, as no firing of CR21 can now take place. Q1 is never switched off and the core ceases to

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

be repetitively charged, causing all output voltages to decay to zero.

10.5 Standby and Auxiliary Video Circuits

In addition to the main switcher supply itself, two other circuits are present in the power supply. These are described separately because they function independently of the main supply. The other two circuits are the:

- * +5 V standby supply and
- * Video focus and brightness adjustments.

10.5.1 The Standby Supply

The standby +5 V supply is a "linear" type and is shown across the top of the schematic. Input AC power from the line filter is presented to the transformer T2. The secondary windings 10/11 and 8/9 each provide approximately 10 VAC 180 degrees out of phase. These are rectified by diodes CR1 and CR22.

The resulting DC voltage has its ripples smoothed by C7 and AC transients removed by C17, before being presented to the 5 V regulator U1. The resulting +5 V output is made available on pin 20.

Note that this line has a low current capacity and is not intended for general use.

10.5.2 The Video Controls

The video controls consist of the resistor network shown towards the upper right of the schematic. Focus is controlled by the potentiometer R3. Brightness is controlled by R5.

Both potentiometers are adjusted by means of the knobs projecting from the back of the power supply. They receive their power from the video board via the +300 V level on pin 1 and the -100 V level on pin B.

CHAPTER 11. ASSEMBLIES

The Lisa is engineered to provide maximum serviceability to the user. Refer to section 3.1 for a discussion of packaging. A general view of the assemblies is given in Figures 3-1 and 3-2.

Note that any nuts or screws lost in the cabinet can be retrieved by tipping it forward. They should then slide out of the air vents at the lower front of the cabinet. Removing the bottom panel should not be necessary.

Section 11.1 outlines components that an user can replace. However, the rest of this chapter is concerned principally with components that are not user-serviceable.

11.1 User-Replaceable Components

Components that any user can replace on any functioning Lisa include the

- * Floppy-disk drive assembly
- * Power supply
- * Motherboard
- * Processor board
- * I/O board
- * Memory boards
- * Expansion boards
- * Keyboard
- * Mouse.

Access to and replacement of these components is described in step-by-step detail in other documentation. Refer to the Preface for a list of related documents.

Servicing of any other components requires knowledge about high-voltage power supplies and video electronics. Dangerous voltages are present and all service personnel must be trained in their use.

11.2 CRT Assembly

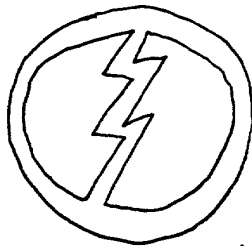
Refer to assembly drawing 620-5115 in Appendix I, which shows an exploded view of the cabinet with the CRT assembly. This assembly includes the:

- * Cathode-ray tube 707-0007
- * Deflection yoke 159-0007
- * Video board PCB assembly 620-x121
- * Video board PCB fab. 820-4012
- * Flyback transformer xxx-xxxx.

11.2.1 CRT Access

Complete the following steps to remove the tube itself. Note that you may need to refer to the Lisa Owner's Guide to complete the first step. Handle the tube with extreme care at all times.

1. Remove the front and back panels from the cabinet, and then remove the power supply and card cage, as shown in the Lisa Owner's Guide.
2. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the two screws underneath the back-top of the Lisa.
3. Lift the top of the Lisa up from the back.
4. Unhook the front where it is hooked in place.
5. Remove the top.
6. Remove the white ground lead from the CRT socket. This is attached to the cabinet immediately above the gun.
7. Unplug the CRT socket from the end of the CRT. Take care not to exert too much pressure on the tube itself.
8. Disconnect the two yoke cables, yellow/green and red/blue, from the video board by unplugging the two 6-pin connectors.
9. Pry the plastic cover up from the HV lead that connects to the side of the CRT.



! WARNING !

CRT Access can be physically FATAL if not performed correctly.

10. Press in one side of the connector under the cover to disengage and remove the lead.
11. The tube itself is held in place by four screws, one at each corner. Prepare a cushioned area on which to place the tube upon removal. Remove the four screws with a 1/4 inch nutdriver.
12. The tube can then be lifted out of the cabinet with the yoke assembly still connected.

To install the tube in the cabinet, complete the steps above in the reverse order. Connect the CRT socket with the CRT almost in place. Connect the HV lead and connectors to the video board after the tube has been screwed in place. Ensure that the correct yoke plugs are inserted in the corresponding sockets on the video board.

11.2.2 Deflection Yoke

Access to the deflection yoke is performed in a manner identical to the CRT. Once the tube has been removed from the cabinet by following the steps in subsection 11.2.1, the deflection yoke can be slid off the back of the CRT by loosening the clamping screw.

Reassembly is performed in the reverse order. Once the deflection yoke has been changed, readjustment of picture orientation by means of the video board controls might be necessary.

11.2.3 Video Board

Access to the video board is performed first by removing the CRT, as outlined in subsection 11.2.1. The procedure is then continued as follows:

1. Disconnect the cabling to the flyback transformer from connector P3 on the video board.
2. Release the CRT socket from the two cable tiedowns.
3. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the screws that hold the top of the video

board onto the back wall of the CRT enclosure.

4. The board can now be removed from the connector on its lower edge and removed from the system.

To install a video board, perform the same steps in reverse order. A new video board does not have the correct adjustments for contrast and focus. Once the Lisa is reassembled and operational, adjust controls at the back of the power supply until the picture is acceptable.

If you replace a video board, picture-size and centering adjustment might be required. This is accomplished with controls on the board itself.

11.2.4 Flyback Transformer

The flyback transformer is attached to the floor of the tube enclosure. It is removed by performing the following steps:

1. Remove the CRT by following the instructions in subsection 11.2.1.
2. Disconnect the flyback transformer cable from P3 on the video board.
3. Remove the flyback transformer cable from any cable tiedowns.
4. Remove the bottom panel of the cabinet by removing the six screws in the logic enclosure.
5. Remove the two nuts underneath the cabinet, taking care to hold the transformer to prevent it falling once these are removed.

When replacing the assembly, ensure that the HV lead is to the back. Clip the bottom of the transformer at the front first and follow the disassembly procedure in the reverse order.

11.3 Cabling

Due to the modular nature of the logic electronics, the interconnections within the Lisa have been kept to a minimum. Interconnections fall into four categories:

- * Power cabling
- * Disk cabling
- * Interface connections
- * Logic connections.

11.3.1 Power Cabling

Power is supplied to the Lisa through a three-wire wall connector and a power cable to a socket in the power-supply assembly. The power-supply assembly in turn provides power to the Lisa via an edge connector, which mates into a plug in the CRT enclosure. The edge connector is part of the power cabling harness that distributes power to the following assemblies:

- * Motherboard
- * Video board
- * Speaker
- * Cover interlock.

Should it become necessary to remove the power harness, the procedure in subsection 11.2.1 must be followed to first remove the CRT. The following steps are then followed:

1. Remove the two screws that hold the video board connector to the wall of the CRT enclosure.
2. Remove the two screws that hold the power supply connector plug to the back wall of the CRT enclosure.
3. Disconnect the speaker plug on the floor of the CRT enclosure.
4. Remove the screw that holds the cover interlock to the cabinet beside the speaker.
5. Remove the two screws that hold the motherboard connector to the wall of the logic board enclosure.

6. Remove any tiedowns holding the cabling to the cabinet.
7. The harness can then be removed from the cabinet.

Installation of a power cable harness is performed in the reverse order. Before installing any tiedowns, ensure that the cable is correctly positioned and that all connectors can reach their proper locations.

If difficulty is encountered mounting the motherboard connector, removal of the flyback transformer makes this connector more accessible.

Ensure that the ground connectors are correctly attached by one of the mounting screws for both the power supply and the video board connectors.

11.3.2 Disk Cabling

The two floppy-disk drives are installed as a single unit in the right-front of the cabinet. They are connected to the logic by means of flat ribbon cables, one for each drive. The cable also provides the logic connection to the board that carries the power switch and the keyboard phone jack at the lower-right front of the cabinet.

To gain access to the cable, first remove the drive assembly 620-5107. Then all steps called for in subsection 11.2.1 must be performed to remove the card cage, power supply and CRT. Finally, to remove the disk cable:

1. Release the cable from the two tiedowns.
2. Unplug the connector to the switch board that contains the power switch and the keyboard jack.
3. Remove the two screws that hold the disk cable motherboard connector to the back of the logic enclosure wall.

Installation is performed in the reverse order. Ensure that the cable has sufficient slack to allow the drives to be placed in front of the cabinet with the cable attached.

11.3.3 Interface Connections

Interface cabling in the Lisa consists of those connectors at the back of the motherboard. No disassembly procedure is required. It is however recommended that connections are made and broken with power off.

The interface connectors themselves are soldered to the motherboard and are not separately replaceable.

11.3.4 Logic Connections

All logic cabling in the Lisa is made by means of edge connectors between logic cards, with the exception of the disk cable, described in subsection 11.3.2 above. There is therefore no disassembly procedure.

11.4 Disk Drive Assembly

The disk drive assembly consists of the following components:

- * Drive carrier 805-4014
- * Drive-carrier shelf 805-4013
- * Upper-disk drive 653-6110
- * Lower-disk drive 653-6110.

There is no difference between the upper and lower drives. They are distinguished logically by the connections made by the two plugs on the disk drive cable.

To remove the bottom drive, remove the four 6-32 Phillips screws on the under surface of the assembly and slide the drive out.

To remove the top drive, remove the six 6-32 Phillips screws that hold the drive carrier shelf in the middle of the assembly, there are three on each side. The shelf and top drive can then be slid out of the assembly. The drive is detached by removal of the four screws on the underside.

11.5 Miscellaneous

The following assemblies are present in the cabinet in addition to those covered in the Lisa Owner's Guide and

the preceding sections. These are:

- * Speaker assembly
- * On-off switch assembly
- * Motherboard assembly
- * Cabinet assemblies.

11.5.1 Speaker Assembly

The speaker is located on the floor of the CRT enclosure. In order to remove it, it is necessary to remove the CRT, as described in subsection 11.2.1. Then the following procedure is followed:

1. Disconnect the speaker from the power cable harness by unplugging the plastic connector.
2. Remove the three screws holding the speaker to the cabinet.
3. Remove the speaker.

To install a speaker, follow the steps above in the reverse order.

11.5.2 On-Off Switch Board Assembly

The on-off switch board is located on the lower-right front of the cabinet. In order to remove the on-off switch board, the disk drive assembly must first be removed, as explained in section 11.4. Then do the following:

1. Unplug the disk cable from the connector on the switch board.
2. Use a long-reach Phillips screwdriver to remove the two screws which hold the board to the base of the cabinet.
3. Remove the board.

Reassembly is performed in the reverse order.

11.5.3 Motherboard Assembly

The motherboard assembly is the carrier unit for all the logic cards in the system. It consists of the

basic PCB with card edge connectors and interface connectors attached plus card guides and a metal frame.

The top of the expansion board card guides can be removed by removing the three Phillips screws that hold it to the top of the left-hand main card guide.

The card guides can be detached by removing the six 4-4Ø Phillips screws that hold the main card guide assembly in place. The two main card guides are attached to one another by three support bars, each of which is held at each end by a Phillips screw.

The metal motherboard frame can be detached from the motherboard itself by removing the fifteen 4-4Ø Phillips screws that hold the two together. Eight of the screws hold the interface connectors in place. The other seven hold the motherboard to the frame.

11.6 Keyboard and Mouse

The keyboard and mouse can be detached from the cabinet, since they are physically separate elements. Also, both may be disassembled if the need arises.

11.6.1 Keyboard Assembly

The keyboard consists of a single PCB which carries all the keys sandwiched between two halves of the case. To access the assembly:

1. Disconnect the keyboard from the Lisa by removing the keyboard jack from the plug at the lower-right of the cabinet.
2. Using a Phillips screwdriver, remove the five screws that hold the keyboard together.
3. Remove the keyboard PCB and place it on a flat surface.

Reassembly is performed in the reverse order. Care must be taken not to apply excessive torque to the threads of the screws.

The keyboard cable is held in place by a Molex-type connector, which provides strain relief. This can

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

be removed as required.

11.6.2 Mouse Assembly

The mouse is a stand-alone device that has a few moving parts. To access the mouse assembly, unplug it from the back of the cabinet and remove the three plastic screws on the underside that hold the body together.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Acknowledge | A signal used during handshake operations to indicate that the current step has been completed. |
| AS | Abbreviation for address strobe; <<which is>>. |
| Asserted | A signal in a true state, which means that the term SIGNAL is in a "high" or "1" state; the term SIGNAL/ is in a "low" or "0" state if it is asserted. |
| Asynchronous modem | A modem that handles asynchronous transmissions. In asynchronous communication, each character is transmitted with its own framing information telling the receiver where the character starts and stops. Since each character is a complete message, the time interval between successive characters need not be fixed. |
| Autovector | The jump to the interrupt handler preloaded at a certain location. When handling certain interrupts, the 68000 automatically jumps to a location predefined for the given interrupt. |
| Battery backup | The rechargeable Nickel/Cadmium batteries with which the I/O board is equipped. Whenever the Lisa is disconnected from a power source, the COPS device continues to receive power from these batteries to allow it to provide a true real-time clock and also initiate software-controlled power-up. |
| Baud rate | The rate at which a modem sends and/or receives information. 110 |

baud means the modem is handling approximately 110 bits per second. If there are two stop bits, a start bit, a parity bit, and a seven bit ASCII character code, 110 bits per second translates into about 10 characters per second.

| | |
|-------------|--|
| BCD | Abbreviation for binary coded decimal; <<which is>>. |
| Bit | Acronym for binary digit; an item of data with only two possible states, either 1 (one) or 0 (zero). |
| B/L/ | Abbreviation for base limit; <<which is>>. |
| Block | A contiguous set of data in the CPU; normally a unit of data written to and read from disk (524 bytes). When referring to memory, it may be of any length, but all addresses of the block are contiguous. |
| Bootng | The process of getting the operating-system software into place and executing. When a computer is turned on, it must "bootstrap" itself into a useable state. |
| Buffer | A logic device used as a bus driver, whether it has latch capability or not. |
| Bus | A set of parallel wires, traces, and paths that carry related data and control information from one device to another. |
| Bus Timeout | A feature that permits the CPU to give peripherals a variable amount of time in which to respond to a transfer request. If the peripheral does not respond to a cycle after approximately 30 microseconds, a bus timeout occurs and the CPU logs an error. |
| Byte | A group of bits. On the Lisa, a byte is always 8 bits. |
| Byte parity | <<Iswill someone define it concisely? Following is what the |

author provided>> When bytes of data are being moved around, one or more bits in the byte can get improperly flipped. These incorrect bits can sometimes be detected by checking the byte parity. The byte's parity is odd if there is an odd number of 1 bits in the byte. If another bit is available in the byte, the sender can ensure that every byte has even parity upon being transmitted. The receiver can then check each byte's parity, and if any are odd, it can inform the CPU that something has gone wrong.

| | |
|-----------|---|
| Card cage | The metal frame that holds the printed circuit boards in the cabinet. |
| CAS | Abbreviation for column address strobe; <<which is>> |
| CASEN | Abbreviation for case enable; <<which is>> |
| Checksum | Similar to byte parity; a number used to ensure that data has not suffered degradation during transfer. A checksum is usually generated by addition of all the bytes in a block in a certain pattern. It is written at the end of blocks of data written to disk. |
| Clock | A continuous, regular waveform used to control the timing of logic decisions. |
| CMOS | Abbreviation for complementary metal-oxide semiconductor. CMOS combines N-channel and P-channel MOS transistors to give low power consumption. Since the non-volatile parameter memory must not consume much power, it is implemented with CMOS chips. |
| Context | A complete set of 128 pairs of registers within the MMU; the Lisa is configured to operate in one of four contexts. The operating system normally executes in context 0. Switching between programs can be |

quickly done by changing context.

| | |
|-------------|---|
| COPS | Abbreviation for control-oriented processor system; in the Lisa, it is used as a controller at both ends of the keyboard interface. |
| Counter | A logic device that sequentially increments or decrements each time a clocking pulse occurs. |
| CPU | Abbreviation for central processing unit; the Motorola 68000 16-bit general-purpose device in the cabinet. |
| CRT | Abbreviation for cathode-ray tube; the screen inside the cabinet. |
| Cycle | The interval between the same phase position of two adjacent clock pulses. |
| Daisy chain | A method of connecting several devices to a single I/O port. Signal lines are passed from device to device in a chain. |
| Deasserted | A signal in a false state, which means that the term SIGNAL would be deasserted if it is "low" or "0"; the term SIGNAL/ is deasserted if it is "high" or "1". |
| Decode | Synonym of select. The decoder's input address determines which of its many outputs is asserted. |
| Disable | Holding any signal in a deasserted state, irrespective of other inputs. |
| DMA | Abbreviation for direct memory access; a device can read and write memory locations directly, without any intervention from the CPU. However, normal memory access goes through the 68000 and its memory manager. |
| Driver | A logic device capable of driving signals that have a large electrical load, such as occurs on a bus. |
| D/A | Abbreviation for digital to analog. |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| | When a digital signal is used to control an analog device, the bits in the digital word must be converted into analog voltage levels. |
| ECC | Abbreviation for error correction code; in memory, ECC is a way to regenerate erroneous data bits that occur. Not yet implemented. |
| Edge detector | Logic that is capable of detecting a signal transition high-to-low or low-to-high. |
| Enable | Allow a signal to either respond to its gating inputs or to gate data into a further stage of the logic. |
| Expansion bus | The signal subset of the internal system bus that is made available on three card slots in the cabinet for the addition of other logic components. |
| Flag | A status bit that indicates the occurrence of some condition in the Lisa. It is usually available for interrogation by the CPU. |
| Flip flop | A digital circuit used to store one bit of data. There are variants on the basic theme but generally, the state changes synchronously with a clock edge, depending on the input state. Also known as "flop" and "FF". |
| Format | An exact description of the sequence of bits as they are organized on a disk. |
| Gate | A switch that controls the flow of data according to some Boolean function of its inputs. |
| GOBYTE | The flag byte used to tell the floppy-disk controller that the CPU wishes to have a macro instruction executed. |
| Handshake | The control of data-transfer between devices. Each device has a way to tell the other that its side of the operation is complete. For example, |

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| IOB | Abbreviation for I/O block; a block of memory used to control and communicate with the floppy-disk controller. |
| Interrupt | A signal that causes the CPU to suspend its current operation and |
| Latch | A register that contains data for a transient period of time; usually until read. |
| Logical Address | An expression that describes the address space generated by the CPU. Since logical addresses are translated into physical addresses by the MMU, these are not physical addresses. They can therefore remain constant even if physical addresses change, provided the MMU is informed of the change. |
| Low | A voltage state that can signify either true or false, depending on the logic being used. |
| LSB | Abbreviation for least significant bit; <<which is>>. |
| ma | Abbreviation for milliampere; equal to one-thousandth of an ampere. |
| Main memory | The RAM located on the memory boards in the cabinet. Main memory is used as storage by the CPU only, and can vary in size from 256 Kbytes to 2 Mbytes. |
| MALE | Abbreviation for memory address latch enable; <<which is ...>>. |
| Memory bus | The collection of signals that interface the memory boards with the processor board. |
| Map | The translation of one addressing system into another. In the Lisa, it describes the process of converting logical addresses into physical addresses. |

April 1983

Lisa Hardware Manual

| | |
|----------------|--|
| Mask | A pattern of bits that controls the contents of a register. Mask bits need not be contiguous. |
| Matrix | The two-dimensional array of bits in memory. |
| Mbyte | Abbreviation for megabyte; equal to one million bytes. |
| MHz | Abbreviation for megahertz; equal to one million cycles per second. |
| mm | Abbreviation for millimeter; a unit of length equal to one-thousandth of a meter. |
| MMU | Abbreviation for memory management unit: hardware in the Lisa that provides a feature called relocation. This allows the CPU and, therefore, resident software to operate on logical addresses, which are translated into physical addresses by the MMU. |
| Motherboard | The circuit board whose main function is to provide connection between the other circuit boards. |
| Mouse | A detachable device that you can roll across a flat surface to direct cursor movement on the screen. |
| ms | Abbreviation for millisecond; equal to one-thousandth of a second. |
| MSB | Abbreviation for most significant bit; <<which is ...>>. |
| mV | Abbreviation for millivolt; equal to one-thousandth of a volt. |
| N-key rollover | Nearly all keyboard interfaces work by scanning the keys and forming a two-dimensional matrix representing the state of the keys. The logic involved can tell when two keys are being pressed simultaneously, rollover; however, when three or more keys are held down, phantom keys can appear. The N-key rollover design adds a diode in series with every key switch to eliminate hidden paths. |

| | |
|------------------|---|
| Nibble | A set of bits smaller than a byte. On the Lisa, a nibble is 4 bits. |
| NMI | Abbreviation for non-maskable interrupt. When the processor receives an interrupt, it usually checks a mask to see whether it should pass control to that interrupt's handler. A non-maskable interrupt is always honored. |
| ns | Abbreviation for nanosecond; equal to one-billionth of a second. |
| Oscillator | A device that provides an accurate time period. It is usually used in clock generation. |
| Page | Defines a contiguous area of main memory that is 512 bytes long. A logical page is this size of area within the CPU's logical address space. A physical page is this size of area within the main memory. |
| Parameter memory | A non-volatile block of RAM set aside for such things as the system serial number, configuration data, and user-defined information. |
| Parity | A function of the number of bits in a word that are high. If there are an even number, the word has even parity. Parity can be checked to insure that one bit in a word has not been incorrectly flipped during transmission. |
| PC | Abbreviation for program counter. A register within the CPU that keeps track of the next instruction to be executed after the current one is complete. |
| PIA | Abbreviation for peripheral interface adapter; an LSI logic device that assists the CPU in interfacing to peripheral logic. On the Lisa, Motorola 6522 VIA devices are used. |
| Pixel | The smallest controllable unit of area on the CRT. It corresponds to one bit of video data and can only be |

on or off, black or white.

| | |
|-------------|--|
| Port | An I/O address location within I/O space. In general, any group of addresses within the same PIA is termed a port also. |
| PROM | Abbreviation for programmable read-only memory; it refers to the fact that the ROM can be programmed. It is usually not-alterable while it is in a computer. |
| RAM | Abbreviation for random-access memory; it is read/write memory. |
| Recalibrate | A technique of establishing absolute track position of the disk heads returning to a known position. |
| Refresh | The operation whereby the dynamic RAM's used for data storage are refreshed with the data they contain. |
| Relocation | The technique implemented in MMU to map the logical address space used by the CPU into the physical address space that reflects the actual configuration of the Lisa. |
| Retry | Repeat the execution of an instruction or routine in an attempt to avoid an error result. Used most frequently on disk access. |
| ROM | Abbreviation for read-only memory; devices that are fabricated with an unalterable program already present. |
| RS232-C | An interface standard that defines a bit-serial interface for use in conjunction with a modem, plus a corresponding communication protocol. |
| RTC | Abbreviation for real-time clock; it is a function implemented on I/O board by the COPS device. Since power is always available to this device, it is used to calculate the real elapsed time at all times. This is available to software for interrogation. |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| RWTS | Abbreviation for Read/Write/Track/Sector; it refers to the controlling routines that drive the floppy disk. The RWTS is that part of the floppy-disk controller's resident program that interrupts the CPU upon completion since it involves actual disk control. |
| Sector | The smallest addressable portion of a disk. Each track normally contains several segments. |
| Seek | To move the heads across the disk surface to position them above a particular track. |
| Segment | An area of the system-address space. It is the main unit of memory dealt with by the MMU. A logical segment is a contiguous block of 128 Kbytes in the CPU's logical address space. It consists of 256 logical pages. A physical segment consists of between 1 and 256 physical pages, depending on the size allocated to it by software via the MMU. Each logical segment has a corresponding physical segment. There are 128 of each in a Lisa. |
| Sense | The operation of interrogating status. |
| Shared Memory | An area of memory that can be accessed by more than one processor. In a Lisa, the disk controller storage area is shared between the 6504 and the CPU. |
| Slot | One of the three slots in the cabinet available for peripheral boards. |
| SLR | Abbreviation for segment limit register; one of the registers within the four sets of 128 such registers contained in the MMU. It is used to define both the size of the physical segment being accessed in one page increments and the type of storage being accessed. |
| SOR | Abbreviation for segment origin |

- register; one of the registers within the four sets of 128 such registers contained in the MMU. It is used to define the lowest address of the physical segment being accessed in terms of pages from the lowest address in memory.
- State Machine** A collection of logic devices capable of executing a very simple series of steps sequentially. It is the simplest form of computer.
- Status** An array of bits that is available to the CPU to inform it of the state of certain portions of the Lisa.
- Strobe** A signal that indicates that data is being transferred for the time that the strobe signal is asserted.
- Sync** A synchronization signal that permits other signals to assume a known state at a known time.
- Synchronous modem** A modem that transmits synchronously, which puts the framing information around a group of characters. The transmitter then automatically inserts fill characters into the stream whenever necessary to maintain synchronicity. Because more of the bits are data, there are fewer stop and start bits than in asynchronous transmission, data transfers can go at a faster rate.
- System Bus** The main bus, which is used to communicate between the processor and I/O boards. A subset of it extends to the expansion slots and is called the expansion bus.
- Tristate** A logic output that can be inactive, asserted or deasserted. These three states may also be termed active high, active low, and open.
- TTL** Abbreviation for Transistor-Transistor Logic; the most common kind of digital device in the Lisa.
- Vertical retrace** The period of time during which the

electron beam in the monitor is returned from the bottom of the screen to the top.

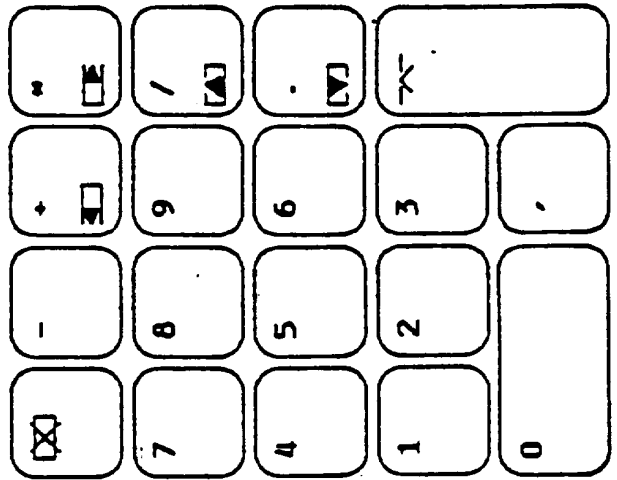
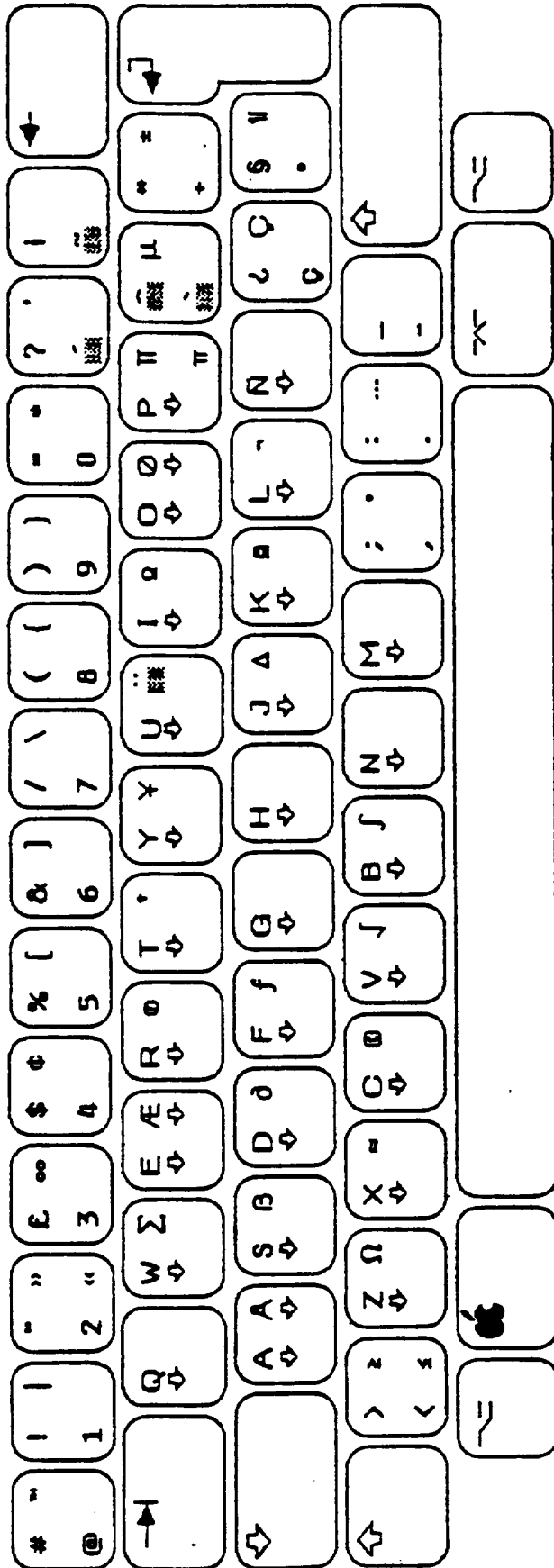
- VIA Abbreviation for Versatile Interface Adapter; the name used by Motorola for their 6522 peripheral port control devices.
- Video Of or pertaining to the CRT and its control circuitry.
- Word A group of bytes. On the Lisa, a word is usually 16 bits, or two bytes.
- Write Protect An operation that inhibits any writing operation to the item protected. This technique can be used for both memory and disks.
- Yoke The control windings on the CRT that deflect the beam.
- ZIF Abbreviation for zero insertion force, which refers to the type of connectors used for the three expansion slots in the cabinet. Since the slots are accessed from the side, a locking device is used to open the connector and permit the PCB's to be slid in from the side of the connector before being locked in place.

Appendix H. Alternate Keyboard Layouts

Following Lisa keyboard layouts are available in addition to the standard, North American, layout shown in Chapter 8.

TN / 8 NOV, 82

Spanish Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--------------------|--|------------------|--|--|
| | Left | | Right | | Primary keyboard | | Alternate keyboard |
| | Up | | Down | | Horizontal Tab | | Caps Lock |
| | Shift | | Alternate Keyboard | | Command | | Back Space |
| | Return (New Line) | | Enter | | Clear | | Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock. |
| | Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed. | | | | | | |

LEGEND (continued)

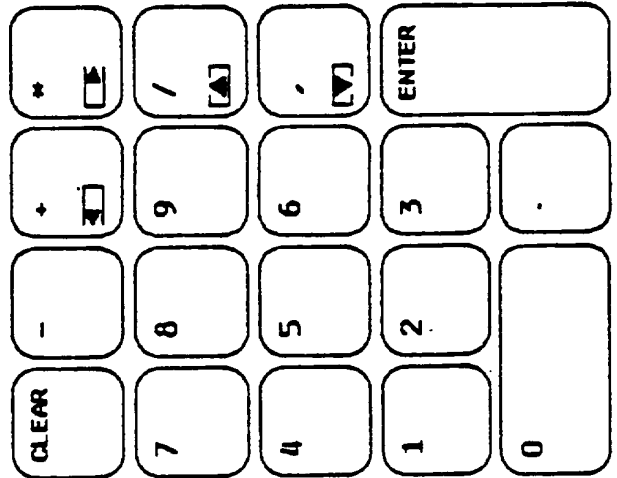
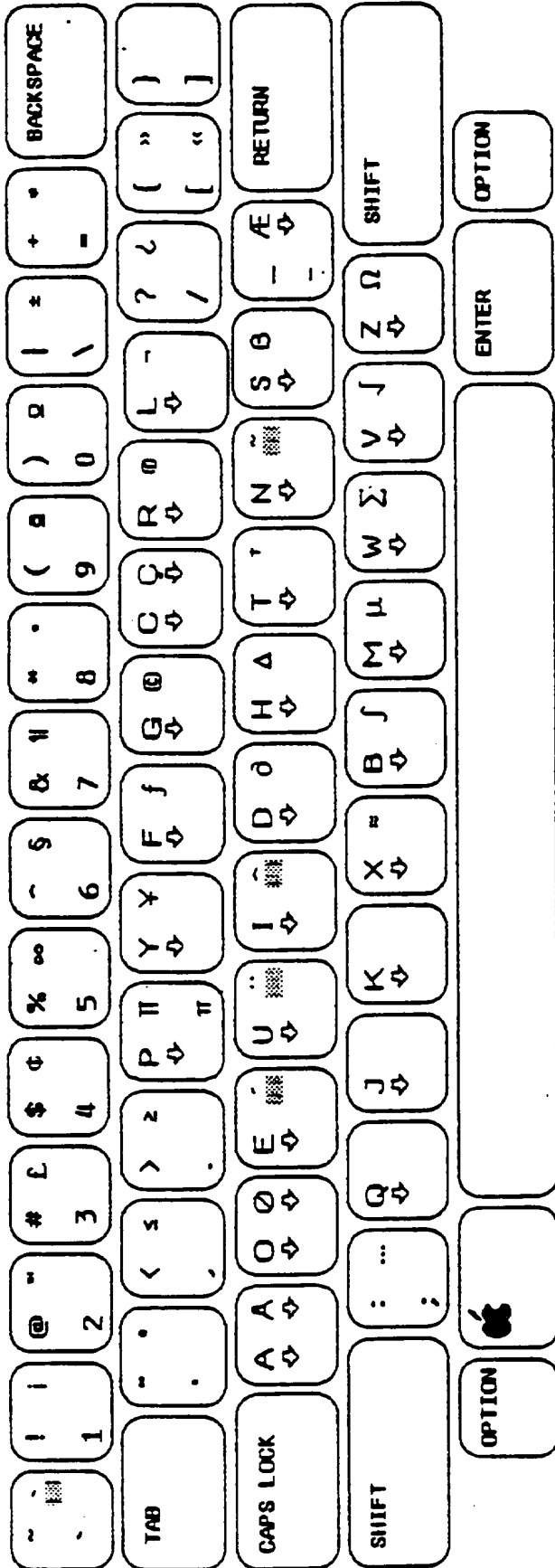
| | | | |
|--|------------------|--|--------------------|
| | Primary keyboard | | Alternate keyboard |
| | Upper: Shifted | | Lower: Unshifted |

Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

US DVORAK Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

- Left
- Right
- Up
- Down
- Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed.
- Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock.
- Selects Alternate Keyboard

Primary keyboard | **Alternate keyboard**

P | **Π** | **Π**
 ↕ | Upper: Shifted | Lower: Unshifted

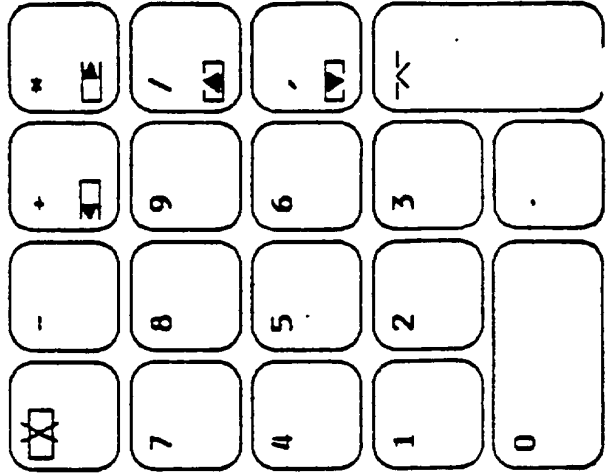
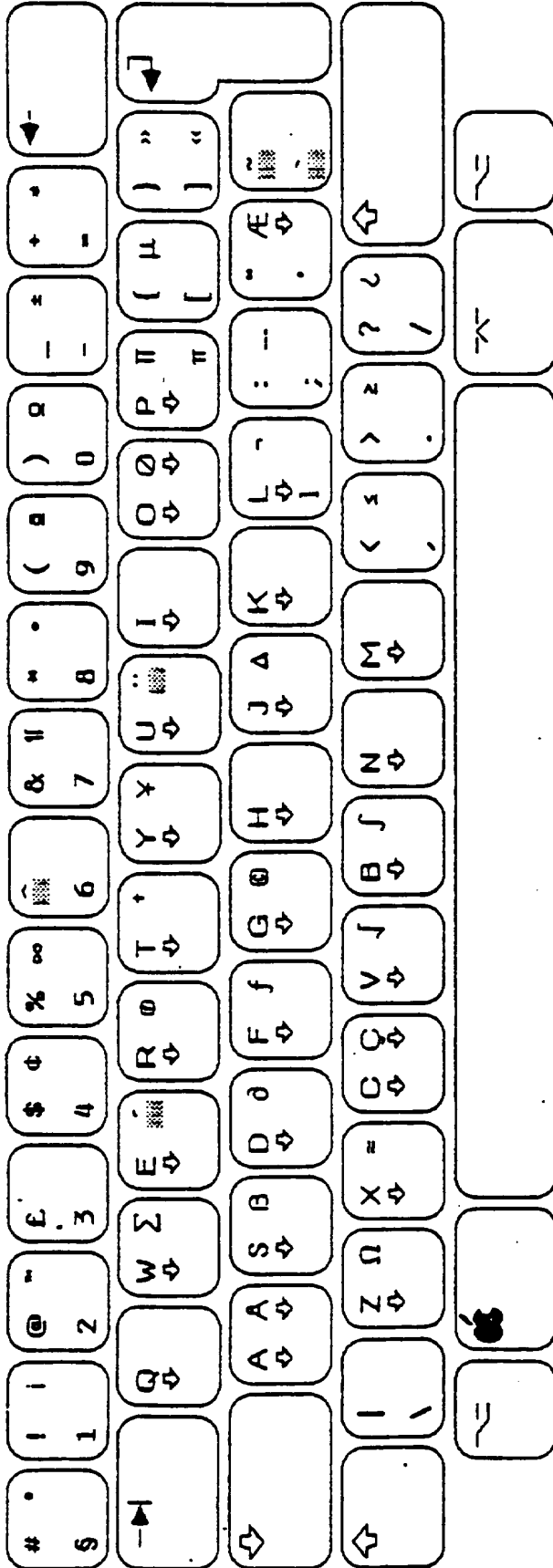
Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- a. If the symbol ↕ is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- b. If the symbol ⇩ is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

TN / 8 NOV, 82

UK Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|--------------------|--|-------|
| | Left | | Right |
| | Up | | Down |
| | Horizontal Tab | | |
| | Caps Lock | | |
| | Shift | | |
| | Alternate Keyboard | | |
| | Command | | |
| | Back Space | | |
| | Return (New Line) | | |
| | Enter | | |
| | Clear | | |

Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock.

Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed.

Primary keyboard | Alternate keyboard

Left: Primary keyboard
Right: Alternate keyboard

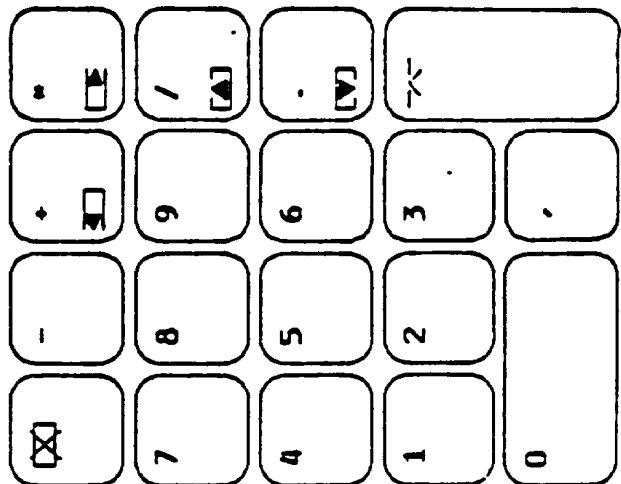
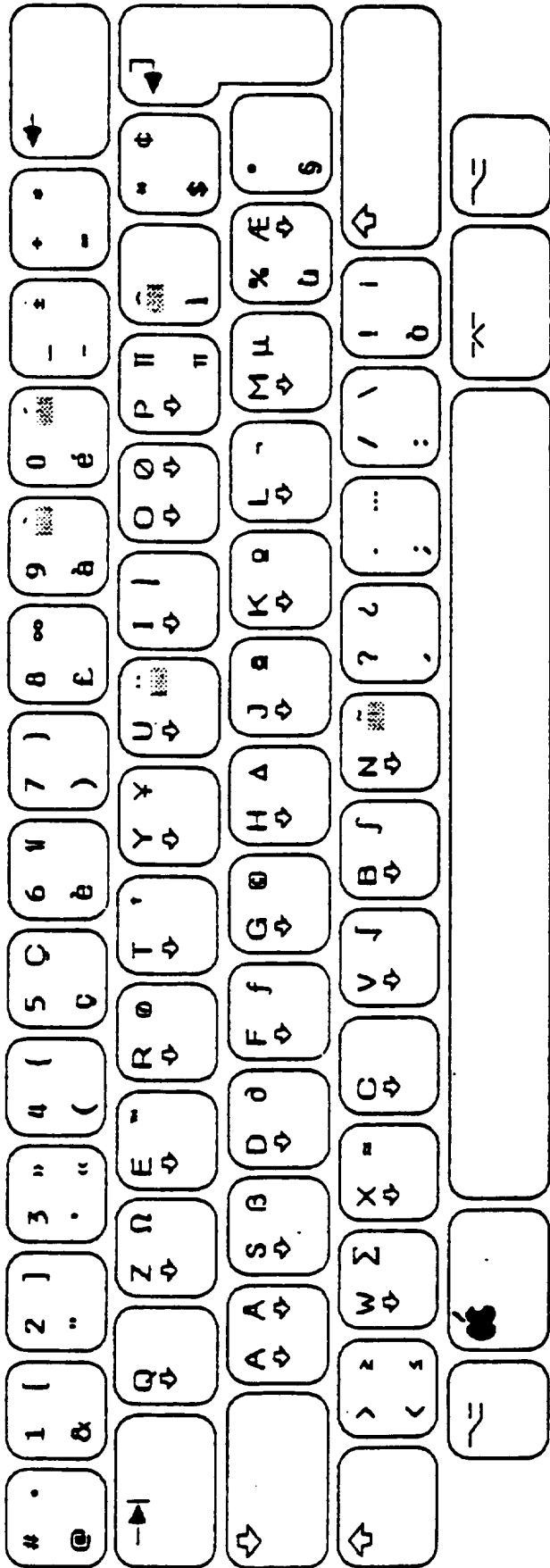
Upper: Shifted
Lower: Unshifted

Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

Italian Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|--------------------|--|-------|
| | Left | | Right |
| | Up | | Down |
| | Horizontal Tab | | |
| | Caps Lock | | |
| | Shift | | |
| | Alternate Keyboard | | |
| | Command | | |
| | Back Space | | |
| | Return (New Line) | | |
| | Enter | | |
| | Clear | | |

Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock.

Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed.

LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|------------------|--|--------------------|
| | Primary keyboard | | Alternate keyboard |
| | Upper: Shifted | | Lower: Unshifted |

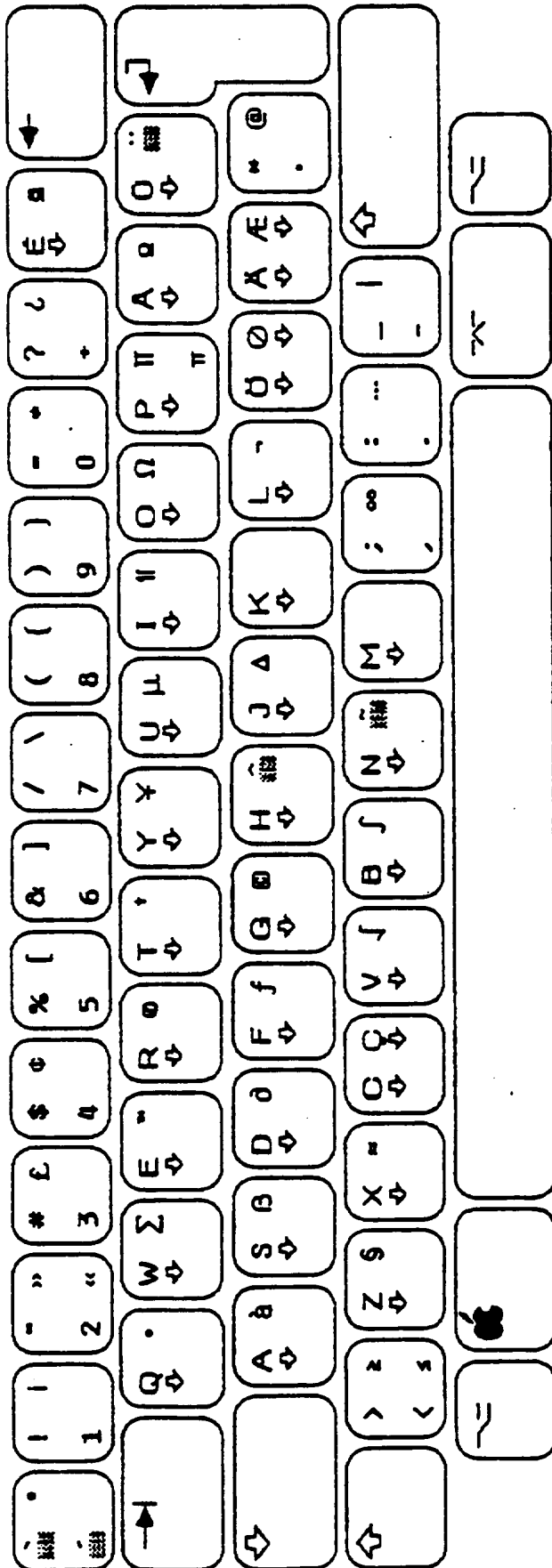
Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

TN / 8 Nov 82

Swedish Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|--|--|-------|
| | Left | | Right |
| | Up | | Down |
| | Horizontal Tab | | |
| | Caps Lock | | |
| | Shift | | |
| | Alternate Keyboard | | |
| | Command | | |
| | Back Space | | |
| | Return (New Line) | | |
| | Enter | | |
| | Clear | | |
| | Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock. | | |
| | Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed. | | |

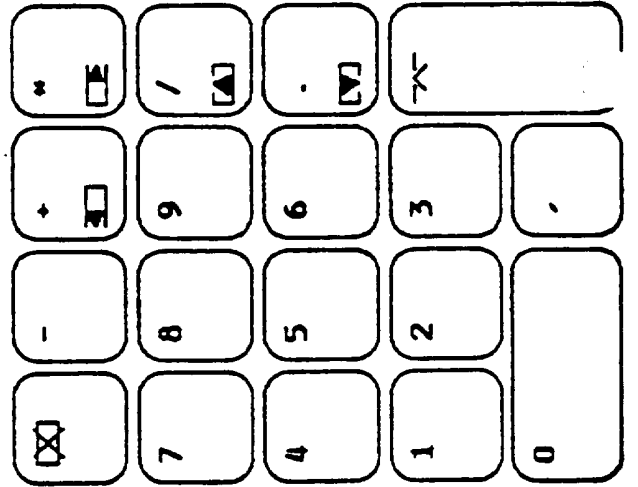
LEGEND Left: Right: Primary keyboard | Alternate keyboard

P **Π** Upper: Shifted
Π Lower: Unshifted

Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keypad.

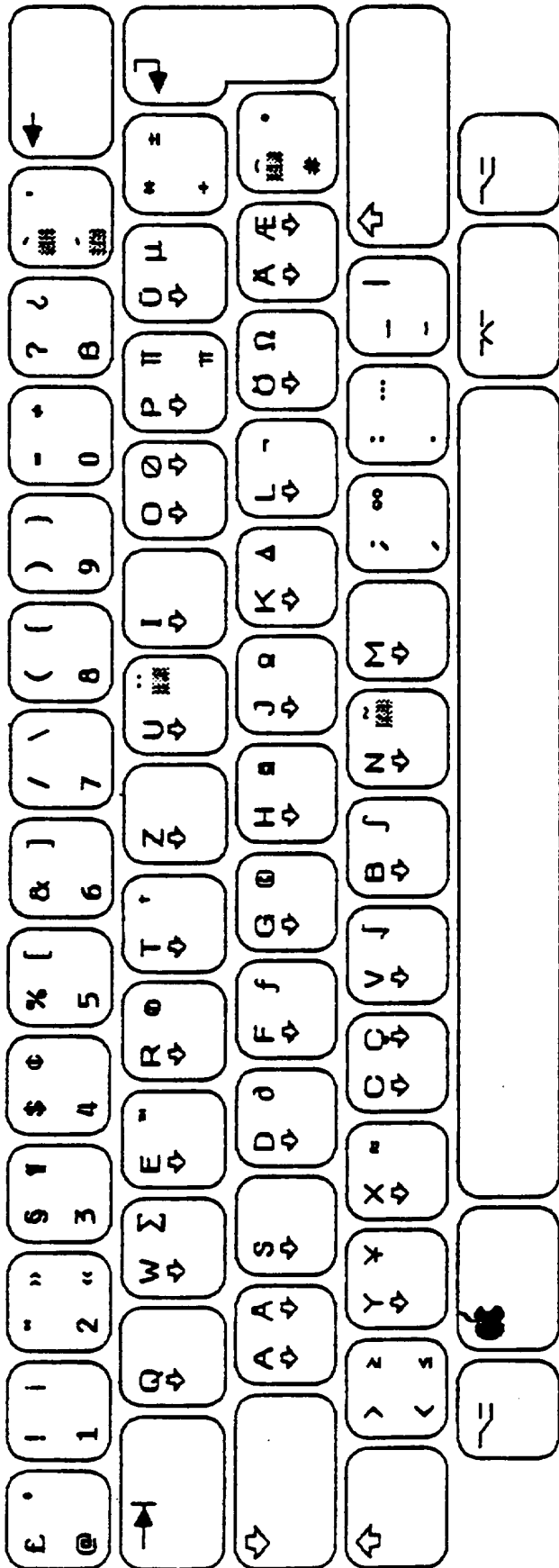
When no character is shown in the lower area of the keypad, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.



TN / 8 Nov, 82

German Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|--------------------|--|-------|
| | Left | | Right |
| | Up | | Down |
| | Horizontal Tab | | |
| | Caps Lock | | |
| | Shift | | |
| | Alternate Keyboard | | |
| | Command | | |
| | Back Space | | |
| | Return (New Line) | | |
| | Enter | | |
| | Clear | | |

Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock.

Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed.

LEGEND Left: Primary keyboard Right: Alternate keyboard

P Upper: Shifted
π Lower: Unshifted

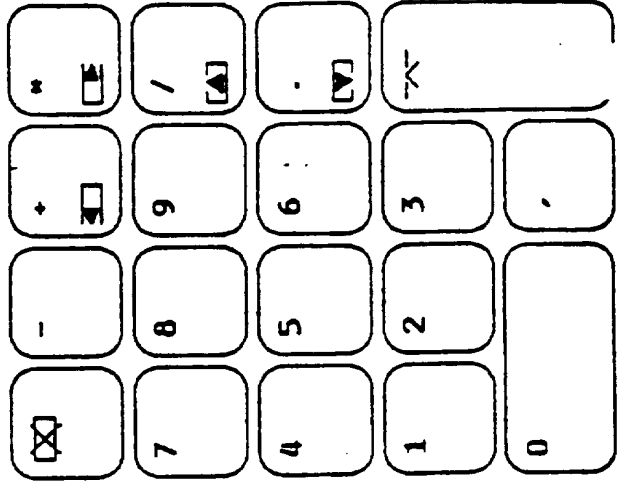
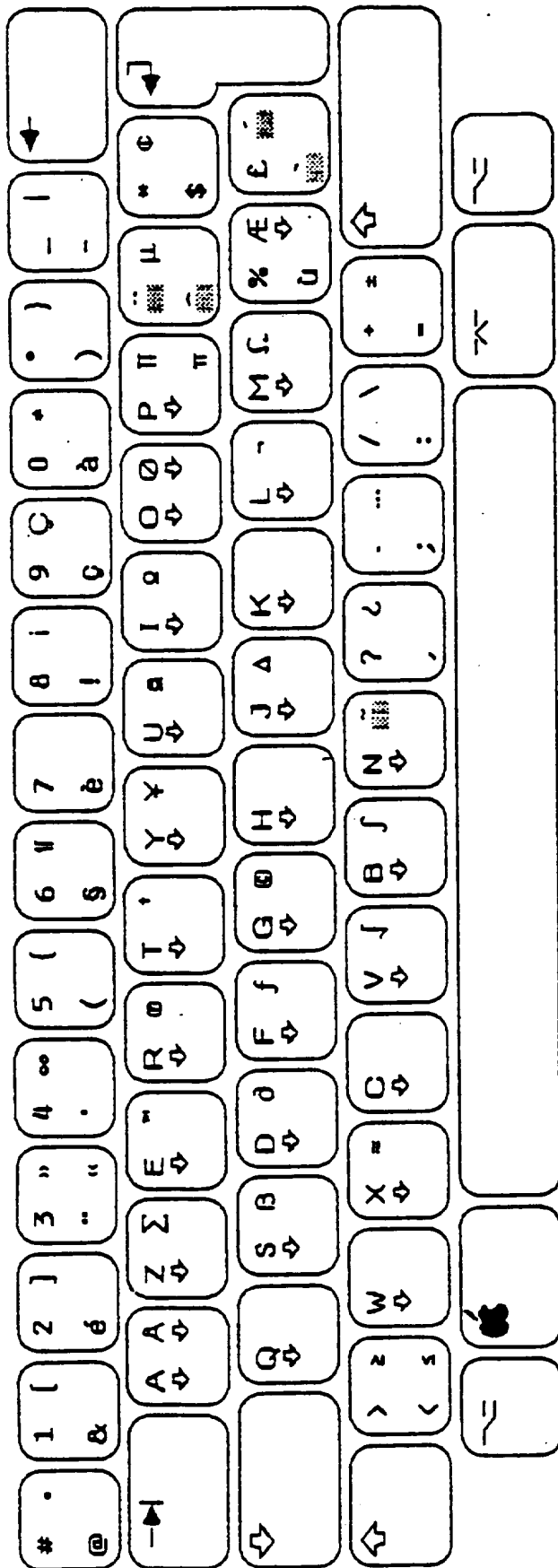
Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

TN / 8 NOV, 82

French Keyboard Layout



LEGEND

| | | | |
|--|--|--|-------|
| | Left | | Right |
| | Up | | Down |
| | Horizontal Tab | | |
| | Caps Lock | | |
| | Shift | | |
| | Alternate Keyboard | | |
| | Command | | |
| | Back Space | | |
| | Return (New Line) | | |
| | Enter | | |
| | Clear | | |
| | Character has lower case and is affected by Caps Lock. | | |
| | Dead key, no character is generated until next key is pressed. | | |

Left: Primary keyboard | **Right: Alternate keyboard**

Upper: Shifted | **Lower: Unshifted**

Legend Example: Upper: Shifted P | Lower: Unshifted P

Boldface indicates that the character is printed on the keytop.

When no character is shown in the lower area of the keytop, one of the following is true:

- If the symbol is shown, the lower character is the lower case equivalent of the upper character.
- If the symbol is not shown, the lower character is the same as the upper character.

Appendix J. Radio and Television Interference

The Lisa generates and uses radio frequency energy. If the Lisa is not installed and used properly (that is, in strict accordance with these instructions), it may cause interference to radio and television reception.

This equipment has been tested and complies with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules. These rules are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation, especially if a "rabbit ear" TV antenna is used. (A rabbit ear antenna is the telescoping rod antenna usually contained on TV receivers.)

You can determine whether your computer is causing interference by turning it off. If the interference stops, it was probably caused by the computer or its peripherals. To further isolate the problem:

- o Disconnect the peripheral devices and their I/O cables one at a time. If the interference stops, it is caused by either the peripheral or its I/O cable. These devices usually require shielded I/O cables. For Apple peripherals, you can obtain the proper shielded cable from your dealer. For non-Apple peripherals, contact the manufacturer or your dealer for assistance.

If your computer does cause interference to radio or television reception, you can try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- o Turn the TV or radio antenna until the interference stops.
- o Move the computer to one side or the other of the TV or radio.
- o Move the computer farther away from the TV or radio.
- o Plug the computer into an outlet that is on a different circuit from the TV or radio. That is,

Lisa Theory of Operations Appendix

make certain the computer and the TV or radio are on circuits controlled by different circuit breakers or fuses.

- o Consider installing a rooftop TV antenna with coaxial cable lead-in between the antenna and the TV.

If necessary, you should consult your dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. You may find helpful the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission: How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems. This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402, Stock Number 004-000-003454.

—
FINIS
—